

# ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT REPORT And

# ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME REPORT FOR LISTED ACTIVITIES ASSOCIATED WITH MINING RIGHT

SUBMITTED FOR INTEGRATED ENVIRONMENTAL AUTHORISATION LODGED IN TERMS OF THE NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT ACT, 1998 AND THE NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT WASTE ACT, 2008 READ WITH REGULATION 19 OF THE ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT REGULATIONS OF 2014 FOR MINING AND RELATED INFRASTRUCTURAL ACTIVITIES ON THE FARM ANNESLEY 109 KT, AND THE FARM HAVERCROFT 99 KT, SITUATED IN THE GREATER TUBATSE MUNICIPALITY OF THE LIMPOPO REGION

NAME OF APPLICANT: NAME OF APPLICANT: IMERYS REFRACTORY MINERALS SOUTH AFRICA (PTY) LTD - ANNESLEY ANDALUSITE MINE (ANNESLEY OPERATION AND HAVERCROFT OPERATION)

TEL NO: (012) 643-5940

PHYSICAL ADDRESS: Annesley Mine, Penge Road, Burgersfort, 1150

FILE REFERENCE NUMBER SAMRAD FOR SECTION 102: LP- 00062-MR/102

**MINING RIGHT NUMBER: 73 MRC** 

January 2019



PO Box 72960, Lynnwood Ridge, 0040; Cell: 072 191 6074, Fax: 012 361 0645

E-mail: salome@becsenv.co.za

#### IMPORTANT NOTICE

In terms of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (Act 28 of 2002 as amended) (MPRDA), the Minister must grant a prospecting or mining right if among others the mining "will not result in unacceptable pollution, ecological degradation or damage to the environment".

Unless an Environmental Authorisation can be granted following the evaluation of an Environmental Impact Assessment and an Environmental Management Programme report in terms of the National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998) (NEMA), it cannot be concluded that the said activities will not result in unacceptable pollution, ecological degradation or damage to the environment.

In terms of section 16(3)(b) of the Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Regulations, 2014, any report submitted as part of an application must be prepared in a format that may be determined by the Competent Authority and in terms of section 17 (1) (c) the competent Authority must check whether the application has taken into account any minimum requirements applicable or instructions or guidance provided by the competent authority to the submission of applications.

It is therefore an instruction that the prescribed reports required in respect of applications for an environmental authorisation for listed activities triggered by an application for a right or a permit are submitted in the exact format of, and provide all the information required in terms of, this template. Furthermore, please be advised that failure to submit the information required in the format provided in this template will be regarded as a failure to meet the requirements of the Regulation and will lead to the Environmental Authorisation being refused.

It is furthermore an instruction that the Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP) must process and interpret his/her research and analysis and use the findings thereof to compile the information required herein. (Unprocessed supporting information may be attached as appendices). The EAP must ensure that the information required is placed correctly in the relevant sections of the Report, in the order, and under the provided headings as set out below, and ensure that the report is not cluttered with uninterpreted information and that it unambiguously represents the interpretation of the applicant.



## 1 Objective of the environmental impact assessment

The objective of the EIA process is to, through a consultative process—

- a. determine the policy and legislative context within which the activity is located and document how the proposed activity complies with and responds to the policy and legislative context;
- b. describe the need and desirability of the proposed activity, including the need and desirability of the activity in the context of the preferred location;
- c. identify the location of the development footprint within the preferred site based on an impact and risk assessment process inclusive of cumulative impacts and a ranking process of all the identified development footprint alternatives focusing on the geographical, physical, biological, social, economic, heritage and cultural aspects of the environment;
- d. determine the--
  - i. nature, significance, consequence, extent, duration and probability of the impacts occurring to inform identified preferred alternatives; and
  - ii. degree to which these impacts
    - aa. can be reversed;
    - bb. may cause irreplaceable loss of resources, and
    - cc. can be avoided, managed or mitigated;
- e. identify the most ideal location for the activity within the preferred site based on the lowest level of environmental sensitivity identified during the assessment;
- f. identify, assess, and rank the impacts the activity will impose on the preferred location through the life of the activity;
- g. identify suitable measures to manage, avoid or mitigate identified impacts; and
- h. identify residual risks that need to be managed and monitored.



# **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

1	Objective of the environmental impact assessment	ii
TABLE	OF CONTENTS	iii
TABLE	OF FIGURES	V
TABLE	OF TABLES	V
ADDEN	IDUMS	vi
ABBRE	VIATIONS	vii
Executiv	ve summary	X
PART A	\	1
SCOPE	OF ASSESSMENT AND ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT REPORT	1
a)	Details of the Environmental Assessment Practitioner	1
b)	Description of the property	2
c)	Locality map	4
d)	Description of the scope of the proposed overall activity	5
e)	Policy and legislative context	8
f)	Need and desirability of the proposed activities	33
g)	Motivation for the preferred development footprint within the approved site including a full descrip	tion of the
	process followed to reach the proposed development footprint within the approved site	42
h)	Description of the process followed to reach the proposed preferred site	46
i)	Details of the development footprint alternatives considered	46
ii)	Details of the public participation process followed	47
iii)	Summary of issues raised by interested and affected parties	54
iv)	The Environmental attributes associated with the sites – baseline environment	54
1	Geology	55
2	Climate	
3	Topography	
4	Soil	
5	Pre-mining land capability, land use and existing infrastructure	
6	Vegetation	
7	Animal life	
8	Surface water	
9	Groundwater	
10	, ,	
11	Environmental noise	
12		
13		
14		
15		
16	,	
v)	Impacts and risks identified including the nature, significance, consequence, extent, duration and	
	of the impacts, including the degree to which these impacts	103



vi)	Methodology used in determining and ranking the nature, significance, consequences, extent,	duration and
	probability of potential environmental impacts and risks	116
vii)	The positive and negative impacts that the proposed activity (in terms of the initial site	layout) and
	alternatives will have on the environment and the community that may be affected	147
viii)	The possible mitigation measures that could be applied and the level of risk	148
ix)	Motivation where no alternative sites were considered	148
x)	Statement motivating the preferred site	148
h)	Full description of the process undertaken to identify, assess and rank the impacts and risks the	e activity will
	impose on the preferred site (In respect of the final site layout plan) through the life of the activity	/ 148
i)	Assessment of each identified potentially significant impact and risk	148
j)	Summary of specialist reports	148
k)	Environmental impact statement	149
l)	Proposed impact management objectives and the impact management outcomes for inclu-	usion in the
	environmental management programme	152
m)	Final proposed alternatives	152
n)	Aspects for inclusion as conditions of Authorisation	152
o)	Description of any assumptions, uncertainties and gaps in knowledge	152
p)	Reasoned opinion as to whether the proposed activity should or should not be authorised	153
q)	Period for which the Environmental Authorisation is required	153
r)	Undertaking	153
s)	Financial Provision	153
t)	Deviations from the approved scoping report and plan of study	154
u)	Other Information required by the competent Authority	155
v)	Other matters required in terms of sections 24(4)(a) and (b) of the Act	155
PART I	В	157
ENVIR	ONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME REPORT	157
a)	Details of the Environmental Assessment Practitioner	157
b)	Description of the Aspects of the activity	157
c)	Composite map	157
d)	Description of impact management objectives including management statements	157
i)	Determination of closure objectives	157
ii)	The process for managing any environmental damage, pollution, pumping and treatment o	f extraneous
	water or ecological degradation as a result of undertaking a listed activity	158
iii)	Potential risk of acid mine drainage	158
iv)	Steps taken to investigate, assess, and evaluate the impact of acid mine drainage	159
v)	Engineering or mine design solutions to be implemented to avoid or remedy acid mine drainage	je 159
vi)	Measures that will be put in place to remedy any residual or cumulative impact that may res	ult from acid
	mine drainage	159
vii)	Volumes and rate of water use required for the mining, trenching or bulk sampling operation	159
viii)	Has a water use licence has been applied for?	159
ix)	Impacts to be mitigated in their respective phases	159



e)	Impact management outcomes	159
f)	Impact management actions	159
g)	Financial provision	160
h)	Mechanisms for monitoring compliance with and performance assessment against the env	ironmental
	management programme and reporting thereon	161
i)	Monitoring of impact management actions	161
ii)	Monitoring and reporting frequency	168
iii)	Responsible persons	168
iv)	Time period for implementing impact management actions	168
v)	Mechanism for monitoring compliance	168
i)	Indicate the frequency of the submission of the performance assessment report	168
j)	Environmental awareness plan	168
k)	Specific information required by the Competent Authority	171
1	Financial provision	171
2	Procedures for environmentally related emergencies and remediation	171
3	Groundwater	175
2)	Undertaking	175
Refer	rences	177
	BLE OF FIGURES e 1: Annesley Andalusite Mine organogram	xi
-	e 2: Locality map of Annesley Mine (taken from IWWMP (Shangoni, 2012)	
	e 3: Regulation 2(2) plan indicating all activities already authorised and applied for	
Figure	e 4: Layout plan which includes the national list of threatened ecosystems	43
Figure	e 5: Layout plan indicating the Limpopo Critical Biodiversity Areas	44
Figure	e 6: Layout plan indicating the Mining Biodiversity area	45
Figure	e 7: Piper diagram indicating the relative distribution of major cations and anions	76
Figure	e 8: Stiff diagrams indicating the relative distribution of major cations and anions	76
Figure	e 9: Schoeller diagram indicating the relative distribution of major cations and anions	77
Figure	e 10: Source apportionment	81
Figure	e 11: Segorong: Average daily PM10 ground level concentration	85
Figure	e 12: Segorong: Annual average PM10 ground level concentration.	86
Figure	e 13: Segorong: Average daily dustfall rate.	87
Figure	e 14: Havercroft: Average daily PM10 ground level concentration	88
Figure	e 15: Havercroft: Annual average PM10 ground level concentration.	89
Figure	e 16: Havercroft: Average daily dustfall rate.	90
Figure	e 17: Population by race	94
TAE	BLE OF TABLES	
Table	e 1: Description of the applicant	X



Imerys Refractory Minerals South Africa (Pty) Ltd – Annesley Andalusite Mine: Annesley Andalusite Mine; Environmental Impact Assessment and Waste License Application – Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Management Programme

Table 2: Description of the EAP	1
Table 3: Farm names, 21-Digit Surveyor General codes, and coordinates	2
Table 4: All listed activities for this application	5
Table 5: Need and Desirability of the proposed project	33
Table 6: I&APs and stakeholders identified	47
Table 7: Rainfall statistics	56
Table 8: Evaporation	57
Table 9: Temperature for Annesley	57
Table 10: Invader plant species found on Annesley Andalusite Mine	59
Table 11: Surface water quality	61
Table 12: Summary of boreholes identified during the hydrocensus	63
Table 13: Comparison of the hydraulic conductivity in different rock types	64
Table 14: DRASTIC vulnerability scores	66
Table 15: Ratings for the Aquifer System Management and Second Variable Classifications	67
Table 16: Ratings for the GQM Classification System	67
Table 17: GQM index for the study area	68
Table 18: Results of acid-base accounting	69
Table 19: Rock Classification	69
Table 20: Leach results evaluated according to the SANS 241: 2015 water quality guidelines	70
Table 21: Water sampling points for chemical constituents	72
Table 22: Hydrochemical data	72
Table 23: Households in the district	93
Table 24: Gender Profile: Males and Females	93
Table 25: Population growth by race	94
Table 26: Age profile	95
Table 27: Household Income Distribution for Sekhukhune District: 2001 and 2011	96
Table 28: Socio-Economic statistics for the area	97
Table 29: Estimated environmental and rehabilitation cost (in kZAR)	154

#### **ADDENDUMS**

**ADDENDUM 1: MAPS AND PLANS** 

Addendum 1A: Locality map of Annesley Mine

Addendum 1B: Entire layout plan for Annesley Mine

**ADDENDUM 2: CURRICULUM VITAE** 

**ADDENDUM 3: SPECIALIST STUDIES** 

Addendum 3A: Air Quality Impact Assessment

**ADDENDUM 4: PUBLIC PARTICIPATION PROCESS** 



Imerys Refractory Minerals South Africa (Pty) Ltd – Annesley Andalusite Mine: Annesley Andalusite Mine; Environmental Impact Assessment and Waste License Application – Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Management Programme

Addendum 4A: Title deeds: the farm Annesley 109 KT, the farm Holfontein 126 KT, the farm Morgenzon

125 KT, the farm Streatham 100 KT, the farm Havercroft 99 KT, and the farm Penge 108 KT

Addendum 4B: Database and map indicating adjacent properties

Addendum 4C: Copy and proof of advertisement

Addendum 4D: Copy and proof of the site notices, and map indicating the location of these site notices

Addendum 4E: Copy and proof of letters sent Addendum 4F: Copy of meeting presentation

Addendum 4G: Minutes of meeting with Roko Malepe Community

Addendum 4H: Attendance register of Roko Malepe Community meeting

Addendum 4I: Minutes of meeting with Babina Tlou Community

Addendum 4J: Attendance register of Babina Tlou Community meeting

#### ADDENDUM 5: COMPETENT AUTHORITIES' CORRESPONDENCE

Addendum 5A: Annesley Mine: Mining right

#### ADDENDUM 6: AGREEMENT WITH BURGERSFORT LANDFILL SITE

#### **ABBREVIATIONS**

AEL	Air emission licence
AMD	Acid mine drainage
CoP	Code of Practice
DMR	Department of Mineral Resources
DMS	Dense Media Separator
DWA	Department of Water Affairs
DWS	Department of Water and Sanitation
EA	Environmental authorisation
EAP	Environment Assessment Practitioner
EC	Electric conductivity
ECA	Environmental Conservation Act No 73 of 1989 (as amended)
EIA	Environmental Impact Assessment
EIAR	Environmental Impact Assessment Report
EIA	Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations, GN 982 of 2014 i.t.o. the National Environmental
Regulations	Management Act No 107 of 1998
EIS	Ecological Importance and Sensitivity
EMP	Environmental management programme
EPWP	Expanded Public Works Programme



FFFARSRA	Fertilizers, Farm Feeds, Agricultural Remedies and Stock Remedies Act No 36 of 1947			
GA	General authorisations			
GGP	Gross Geographic Product			
GDP	Gross Domestic Product			
GQM	Groundwater Quality Management			
HCS	Hazardous chemical substance			
HDSA	Historically Disadvantaged South Africans			
HMS	Heavy Medium Separation			
HRD	Human Resource Development			
HSA	Hazardous Substances Act No 15 of 1973 (as amended)			
I&APs	Interested and affected parties			
IWWMP	Integrated water and waste management plan			
IWUL	Integrated Water Use License			
IWULA	Integrated Water Use License Application			
LED	Local Economic Development			
LEDET	Limpopo Department of Economic Development, Environment and Tourism			
LoM	Life of Mine			
MA	Minerals Act No 50 of 1991			
MHSA	Mine Health and Safety Act No 29 of 1996 (as amended)			
MPRDA	Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act No 28 of 2002 (as amended)			
MPRDR	Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Regulations, GN 527 of 2004 (as amended) i.t.			
	the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act No 28 of 2002			
MSDS	Material safety data sheet			
mS/m	Millisiemens/meter			
MWP	Mining works programme			
NDEA	National Department of Environmental Affairs			
NEMA	National Environmental Management Act No 107 of 1998 (as amended)			
NEMAQA	National Environmental Management Air Quality Act No 39 of 2004 (as amended)			
NEMBA	National Environmental Management Biodiversity Act No 10 of 2004 (as amended)			
NEMWA	National Environmental Management Waste Act 59 of 2009 (as amended)			
NFA	National Forest Act No 84 of 1998			
NHRA	National Heritage Resources Act No 25 of 1999			
NRTA	National Road Traffic Act No 93 0f 1996			
NVFFA	National Veld and Forest Fire Act No 101 of 1998			
NWA	National Water Act No 36 of 1998 (as amended)			
OHSA	Occupational Health and Safety Act No 85 of 1993 (as amended)			
PCB	Polychlorinated biphenyl			
PCD	Pollution control dam			
PES	Present Ecological Score			
POPs	Persistent organic pollutants			



Imerys Refractory Minerals South Africa (Pty) Ltd – Annesley Andalusite Mine: Annesley Andalusite Mine; Environmental Impact Assessment and Waste License Application – Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Management Programme

PPE	Personal Protective Equipment
PPP	Public participation process
PTO	Permission to Occupy
RoD	Record of decision
RWD	Return water dam
SABS	South African Bureau of Standards
SANAS	South African National Accreditation System
SLP	Social and Labour Plan
TDF	Tailings disposal facility, also tailings dam or slimes dam
TDS	Total Dissolved Solid
TWQR	Target Water Quality Range
WQP	Water quality parameters
WRD	Waste rock dump



### **Executive summary**

### **Applicant**

BECS Environmental has been appointed by Imerys Refractory Minerals South Africa (Pty) Ltd: Annesley Andalusite Mine (Annesley Mine) to apply for an environmental impact assessment (EIA) and a waste license (WL).

Annesley Mine has an existing mining right on the farm Annesley 109 KT, the farm Holfontein 126 KT, the farm Morgenzon 125 KT, the farm Streatham 100 KT, and Havercroft 99 KT, in Limpopo Province. This mine consists of two operations, the Annesley Operation and the Havercroft Operation. This environmental application includes only the farm Annesley 109 KT, and the farm Havercroft 99 KT. The Section 102 application that forms part of this application includes the farm Annesley 109 KT, and the farm Havercroft 99 KT as well as the farm Penge 108 KT.

Annesley Mine was previously known as Rhino Minerals (Pty) Ltd (refer to the mining right attached as Addendum 5A). The name has changed to Imerys Refractory Minerals South Africa (Pty) Ltd (a member of the Imerys Group), however, it is still the same company with same company registration number. Annesley Operation was originally the Timeball Andalusite Mine. Annesley Andalusite Mine was originally the Havercroft Andalusite Mine. The EIA and a WL are located on the farm Annesley 109 KT, and the farm Havercroft 99 KT.

Refer to Table 1 below for a description of the applicant, and Figure 1 for an organogram of the applicant. The properties are owned by two different tribal communities, under the Republic of South Africa as indicated on the title deeds.

Table 1: Description of the applicant

Project applicant	Imerys Refractory Minerals South Africa (Pty) Ltd – Annesley Mine
Contact person	Hendrik Jones
Designation	Operational Director
Telephone number	+27 12 643 5940
E-mail address	Hendrik.Jones@imerys.com



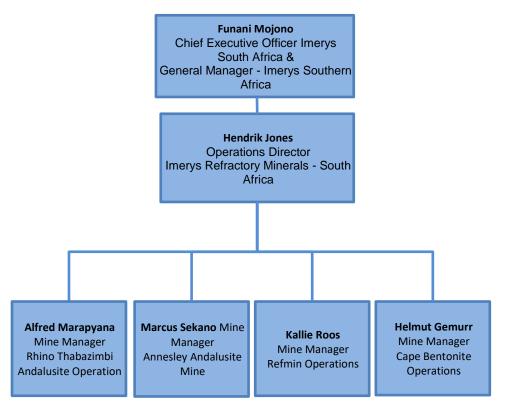


Figure 1: Annesley Andalusite Mine organogram

The applicant decided to apply for an extension for the submission of the EMP as the Department requested an Air Quality Impact Assessment and that public participation included meetings with the communities. The meeting with the Babina Tlou community only happened on the 14<sup>th</sup> January 2019 as there was unrest within the community. The extension application was received by the DMR on the 19<sup>th</sup> of September 2018 and was granted on the 23<sup>rd</sup> of October 2018. The new date for submission granted an extension of 50 days which was the 25<sup>th</sup> of January 2019 for submission.

#### **Project description**

The proposed activities are as follow:

- Construction of a catchment/settling point to catch dirty water from the plant area. This point is necessary to catch all dirty water from the plant area and construction hereof was advised by the Department of Mineral Resources (DMR).
- Diversion of a river for the continuation of mining activities. The mining area with its waste rock dump (WRD) will be located within a drainage line, therefore the diversion of this drainage line is necessary.
- Backfilling of Quarries 6 & 7 with mine residue. This is done as part of rehabilitation of the mine.
- The remining of the Havercroft Operation slimes dam and waste rock dump, located on the farm Havercroft 99 KT.



- The remining of the Segorong waste rock dump and HMS waste rock dump, located on the farm Annesley 109 KT
- The remining of backfilled tailings in Quarry 1, located on farm Annesley 109 KT.
- The extension of the mining right area to include the Penge Shaft and associated tanks om the farm Penge 108 KT (no environmental authorisation necessary for this step).

No alternative is considered for the catchment/settling point. This area is necessary to prevent pollution from dirty water. The only alternative for the river diversion is the no-go option whereby the mining activities will take place over the river without any river diversion, therefore this will also not be considered. Backfilling of the quarries is also part of the mine's rehabilitation; therefore, no alternative is included.

#### Legal requirements

According to Section 24(2) and 24(5) of the National Environmental Management Act No 107 of 1998 (as amended) (NEMA):

'The Minister, or an MEC with the concurrence of the Minister, may identify (a) activities which may not commence without environmental authorisation(EA) from the competent authority; (b) geographical areas based on environmental attributes, and as specified in spatial development tools adopted in the prescribed manner by the Minister or MEC, with the concurrence of the Minister, in which specified activities may not commence without EA from the competent authority.

The Minister, or an MEC with the concurrence of the Minister, may make regulations consistent with subsection (4) laying down the procedure to be followed in applying for, the issuing of and monitoring compliance with EAs.'

According to Section 19(1) of the National Environmental Management Waste Act No 59 of 2008 (as amended) (NEMWA):

The Minister may by notice in the Gazette publish a list of waste management activities that have, or are likely to have, a detrimental effect on the environment.

Furthermore, a person who wishes to commence, undertake or conduct a waste management activity listed under Category B, must conduct a scoping and environmental impact reporting process set out in the EIA Regulations made under section 24(5) of the NEMA as part of a waste management licence application contemplated in section 45 read with section 20(b) of NEMWA.



#### **Summary of impacts**

Impacts from the river diversion are given below. Please note, with exception of the topographic location of the systems, the wetland indicators necessary for the classification as wetlands were not observed on site.

- Direct loss of the vegetation on site.
- Loss of certain floral biodiversity aspects.
- Affecting of the ecosystem function through the introduction of alien and invasive species as a result of disturbance to the soil after vegetation clearing which results in the establishment of alien species.
- Disruption of wetland biota.
- Complete loss of wetland habitat.
- Very large destruction of the current drainage channels.
- The flows of water will be diverted thus altering movement, velocity and direction of flows
- The current sediment regime will be completely lost
- Complete loss of geomorphology
- Damage to infrastructure and/or excessive flow into quarry area.
- Erosion of steep slopes accompanied by siltation of downstream receiving environment.
- Seepage from already existing mine residue.

Impacts from the backfilling of fine tailings into Quarries 6 & 7, and construction and operation of the catchment/settling point are given below.

- Mixing of clean and dirty water and siltation of surface water resources.
- Pollution of groundwater through seepage from backfilled quarries.

Impacts from the backfilling of fine tailings into Quarries 6 & 7 are given below.

- Wind erosion from exposed surfaces filled with tailings.
- Change in topography leading to visible intrusions in the rural area.
- Safety of tailings disposal facility (TDF)



#### **PART A**

# SCOPE OF ASSESSMENT AND ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT ASSESSMENT REPORT

### a) Details of the Environmental Assessment Practitioner

This section includes the following: Details of the environmental assessment practitioner (EAP); expertise of the EAP, which includes the qualifications of the EAP (with evidence) and a summary of the EAP's experience - in carrying out the EIA Procedure; and a declaration that the EAP is independent in a form as may be specified by the competent authority

BECS Environmental was appointed as an independent consultant (EAP) to meet the requirements as set out in regulation 13 of the EIA Regulations. Refer to Table 2 below to a description of the EAP, and refer to Addendum 2 for a detailed CV of the EAP, which includes the expertise including qualifications and experience.

Table 2: Description of the EAP

Name of company	BECS Environmental
Postal address	PO Box 72960, Lynnwood Ridge, 0040
Telephone number	012 361 9970
Cell phone number	072 191 6074
Facsimile number	012 361 0645
E-mail address	salome@becsenv.co.za
Name of responsible EAP	Salome Beeslaar
Expertise of EAP	B.Sc Environmental Science (UP), B.Sc Honours
	Geography (UP), M.Sc Geography (UP), Professional
	Scientist (Environmental Science)
Name of second responsible EAP	Deshree Pillay
Expertise of EAP	B. Sc Environmental Science (UP), B. Sc Honours
	Geography & Environmental Science (UP)

I, Salome Beeslaar (8310190032081), hereby declare that I have no conflict of interest related to the work of this report. Specially, I declare that I have no business, personal, or financial interests in the property and/or mining right being assessed in this report, and that I have no personal or financial connections to the relevant property owners, or mine. I declare that the opinions expressed in this report are my own and a true reflection of my professional expertise and that there are no circumstances that may compromise my objectivity in performing such work.





Salome Beeslaar

MSc – Geography, SACNASP (400385/14) January 2019

# b) Description of the property

Refer to Table 3 below for a description of the property. A locality map of the Annesley Operations is provided below in Figure 2.

The mining right is located on the Farm Annesley 109 KT, Holfontein 126 KT, Morgenzon 125 KT, Streatham 100 KT, and Havercroft 99 KT, Greater Tubatse Local Municipality, Limpopo Province.

The remining of the Havercroft Operation slimes dam and waste rock dump is located on the farm Havercroft 99 KT. The remining of Segorong waste rock dump and HMS waste rock dump is located on the farm Annesley 109 KT. The remining of backfilled tailings in Quarry 1 is located on the farm Annesley 109 KT. This application also includes the extension of the mining right area to include **ONLY** the Penge Shaft and associated tanks on the farm Penge 108 KT. See the table below.

Table 3: Farm names, 21-Digit Surveyor General codes, and coordinates

Farm Name	The farm Annesley 109 KT, the farm Holfontein 126 KT, the farm Morgenzon 125 KT,			
	the farm Streatham 100 KT, the farm Havercroft 99 KT, and the farm Penge 108 KT.			
Application area (Ha)	16,601.2076ha			
Magisterial district	Sekhukhune District Municipality and Greater Tubatse Local Municipality			
Distance and direction	5km of the old Penge mining town, 5km from Ga Malepe, and approximately 31km			
from nearest town	north of Burgersfort town, on the R37 road towards Penge			
21-digit Surveyor	Annesley 109 KT:	Streatham 100 KT:		
General Code for	T00KT0000000010900000 T00KT0000000010000000			
each farm portion	2603.0193ha	3893.7945ha		
Holfontein 126 KT:		Havercroft 99 KT:		
	T00KT00000000012600000	T00KT00000000009900000		
	1839.5395ha	4289.5123ha		
Morgenzon 125 KT: Penge 108 KT:				



	T00KT00000000012500000	T00KT0000000010800000
	1311.5275ha	2663.8145ha
Coordinates	Annesley 109 KT:	S24.4674, E30.2799
	S24.4385, E30.2583	S24.4385, E30.2583
	S24.3685, E30.2016	
	S24.3580, E30.2226	Streatham 100 KT:
	S24.3784, E30.2635	S24.3139, E30.1623
		S24.3487, E30.2155
	Holfontein 126 KT:	S24.3050, E30.2557
	S24.4121, E30.2608	S24.2830, E30.2387
	S24.3784, E30.2635	
	S24.4253, E30.3154	Havercroft 99 KT:
	S24.4480, E30.3037	S24.3487, E30.2155
		S24.3782, E30.2633
	Morgenzon 125 KT:	S24.3674, E30.3047
	S24.4121, E30.2608	S24.3050, E30.2557
	S24.4480, E30.3037	
		Penge 108 KT:
		S24.3783, E30.2636
		S24.4254, E30.3160
		S24.3670, E30.3111
		S24.3705, E30.3484
Title deeds numbers	Annesley 109 KT:	Streatham 100 KT:
	T8670/1948	1948/03/17
	Holfontein 126 KT:	Havercroft 99 KT:
	T8670/1948	1948/03/17
	Morgenzon 125 KT:	Penge 108 KT:
	T8670/1948	T30976/1993



# c) Locality map

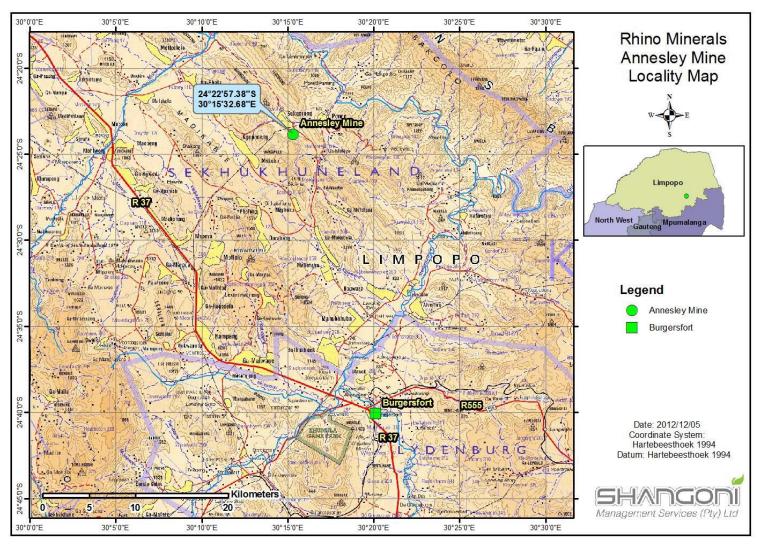


Figure 2: Locality map of Annesley Mine (taken from IWWMP (Shangoni, 2012)



# d) Description of the scope of the proposed overall activity

Annesley Andalusite Mine has an existing mining right which elapses on the 5<sup>th</sup> of July 2026. Refer to Addendum 5A for this mining right. The mineral currently being mined is Andalusite (Al<sub>2</sub>SiO<sub>5</sub>) and is a refractory mineral. The mine has an approved air emissions license for the mining activities. The mine has two water use licenses, one for the Annesley Operations and one for the Havercroft Operations, which has elapsed. The mine will liaise with DWS to update the Annesley Operation water use license as necessary to include ongoing activities at the mine. The mine will also discuss the Havercroft Operation water use licence with DWS. The mine is currently applying for a Section 24G rectification to obtain an Environmental Authorisation for the unlawful commencement and continuation of silt traps, pollution control dam (PCD) and overflow dams. The mine is further also applying for an EIA and waste licence for a river diversion, backfilling of Quarries 6 & 7 and construction of a settling point. A basic assessment process is also underway to decommission the plant at Havercroft Operation. In accordance to the Section 102 application, the mine has applied for an EIA and waste license for the remining of the slimes dam.

#### (i) Listed and specified activities

This application is for both EIA and WL applications. Refer below to Table 4 for all listed activities as well as Figure 3 for a surface layout plan for the proposed activities. This layout plan includes having taken into consideration environmental features and current land uses and will include any additional issues raised by interested and affected parties (I&APs).

This process is for the application for the activities listed below.

Table 4: All listed activities for this application

Name of activity	Aerial extent of	Listed	Applicable	Waste
	the activity	activity	listing	management
			notice	authorisation
Basic Assessment:	Pipelines might	10	GN 983 (GN	
The development and related operation of	be constructed		327)	
infrastructure exceeding 1 000 metres in length	for transport.			
for the bulk transportation of sewage, effluent,				
process water, waste water, return water,	Size not yet			
industrial discharge or slimes –	applicable			
(i) with an internal diameter of 0,36 metres or				
more; or				
(ii) with a peak throughput of 120 litres per				
second or more;				
Waste licence: Remining of mine residue.	Surveyor to			GNR 633
	update sizes.			Category B(11)



Name of activity	Aerial extent of	Listed	Applicable	Waste
	the activity	activity	listing	management
			notice	authorisation
The establishment or reclamation of a residue				
stockpile or residue deposit resulting from				
activities which require a mining right,				
exploration right or production right in terms of				
the Mineral and Petroleum Resources				
Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002).				

# (ii) Description of the activities to be undertaken

The proposed activities are as follow and have been extracted from the amended Mining Work Programme (2018):

This is an already existing mine, therefore no additional infrastructure requirements for this amendment. The dedicated HMS plant will be erected within the boundaries of the existing plant and will use the existing infrastructure for supply of electricity and water. However, time will be required to upgrade the plant and install the dedicated HMS equipment for the processing of remined mine residue.

The remining of the Havercroft Operation slimes dam and waste rock dump is located on the farm Havercroft 99 KT. The remining of Segorong waste rock dump and HMS waste rock dump is located on the farm Annesley 109 KT. The remining of backfilled tailings in Quarry 1 is located on the farm Annesley 109 KT. This application also includes the extension of the mining right area to include ONLY the Penge Shaft and associated tanks on the farm Penge 108 KT. The transfer of slimes from Annesley Andalusite Mine (Havercroft Operation) will be done by truck using the existing road between Annesley and Annesley Andalusite Mine (Havercroft Operation). If necessary, the tailings will be piped to Annesley plant

The mine residue will be mined by conventional mining method using excavator and trucks. The quantities mined will be smoothed all over the life of mine to keep a constant ratio between coarse feed from the mine and fine feed from the dumps. Mining will be processed from top to bottom to avoid generating high-walls and unstable slopes. The waste from crushing and density separation will return to the open-pits to assist with further rehabilitation.

All mining activities are currently taking place at the Segorong Quarry. Mining will further advance over Streatham farm. The mine is opencast using hard rock bench mining. The quarry is cut into the slopes on the bedding plane of the formation for approximately 110m with an average height of 40m (occasionally the height may reach 70m). The mine has authorisation for all pit mining.



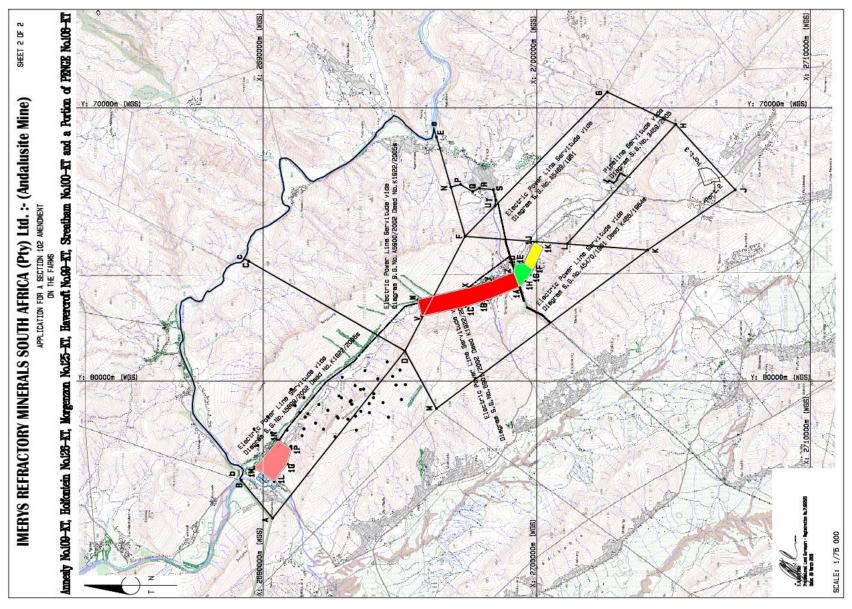


Figure 3: Regulation 2(2) plan indicating all activities already authorised and applied for



# e) Policy and legislative context

Information for this section was extracted from the draft Environmental Impact Assessment Report/Environmental Management Programme (EIA/EMP) for Annesley Mine (BECS Environmental, 2017), which must still be submitted to the DMR.

Applicable legislation and	Description of legislation and guidelines used to	Reference	How does this development comply with
guidelines used to compile the	compile the report (reference and description)	where applied	and respond to the policy and legislative
report			context (significance)
Authorisation applications			
MPRDA	According to the MPRDA, Annesley Andalusite	Addendum 5A	The mine has an approved mining right. This
	Mine must have a mining right as well as an		mining right has also been converted to the
	approved EMP. Due to changes from the Minerals		new MPRDA requirements. The mining right
	Act no 50 of 1991 (MA) to the MPRDA in 2002, all		was applied for and approved prior to 8
	mining rights had to be converted in 2009 from the		December 2014, therefore the requirements
	old MA to the new MPRDA. Any mining right		pertaining to a new mining right is not
	application submitted after 8 December 2014 must		applicable.
	be done in terms of NEMA and not MPRDA. This		
	application will include the listed activities pertaining		
	to mining (i.e. Activity 17 of GN 984 of the EIA		
	Regulations). These applications are still submitted		
	to DMR.		
	Any changes in the mining right, EMP, mining works	Addendum 5A	The mine applied for a section 102
	programme (MWP), or EA, must be authorised		amendment, a waste license and an EIA for
	through a Section 102 (in terms of the MPRDA)		the remining of the Havercroft Operation
	amendment.		slimes dam and waste rock dump, located on
			the farm Havercroft 99 KT, the remining of the
			Segorong waste rock dump and HMS waste
			rock dump, located on the farm Annesley 109
			KT, the remining of backfilled tailings in Quarry



Applicable legislation and	Description of legislation and guidelines used to	Reference	How does this development comply with
guidelines used to compile the	compile the report (reference and description)	where applied	and respond to the policy and legislative
report			context (significance)
			1, located on farm Annesley 109 KT, the
			extension of the mining right area to include
			the Penge Shaft and associated tanks om the
			farm Penge 108 KT (no environmental
			authorisation necessary for this step).
NEMA and the Environmental	The first listed activities which required an EA	Addendum 5A	The mine is in the process to apply for an EIA
Conservation Act 73 of 1989 as	(referred to as a record of decision (RoD) in the		for the river diversion, settling point and the
amended (ECA)	past) commenced in 1998. These activities were		backfilling of Quarries 6 & 7 at Annesley
	published in the EIA Regulations of 1998 (GN1183).		Operation. The mine is currently waiting for
	In 2006, the ECA activities and EIA Regulations		finalisation of the water use license from DWS.
	were replaced by the first NEMA EIA Regulations.		As part of the Section 102 application the mine
	The second set of NEMA EIA activities replaced the		has also applied for an EIA and a waste
	first set of NEMA EIA activities in 2010. The ECA		license.
	activities, as well as the first and second NEMA EIA		
	activities, excluded the application for an EIA when		No EA for the application of a mining right is
	applying for a mining right; however, there are		necessary because the mine is older than 8
	various other activities that could potentially trigger		December 2014.
	an EIA. The third set of NEMA EIA activities		
	commenced on 8 December 2014. According to		
	these listings, an applicant must apply for both a		
	mining right as well as an EA for any new mine, and		
	a prospecting right as well as an EA for any new		
	prospecting activities.		
NWA	Section 21 of the NWA sets out the water uses for	Not applicable	Havercroft Operation has and IWUL; however,
	which an IWUL is required. These water uses		it has elapsed. DWS will advise whether an



Applicable legislation and	Description of legislation and guidelines used to	Reference	How does this development comply with
guidelines used to compile the	compile the report (reference and description)	where applied	and respond to the policy and legislative
report			context (significance)
	commenced on 1 October 1998, and include		IWULA is necessary for the decommissioning
	permissible water uses (water uses for which no		and rehabilitation. Annesley Operation has an
	licensing or registration is necessary), general		IWUL. A pre-application meeting is set to take
	authorisations (GA) (water uses for which		place on the 19 <sup>th</sup> of July 2018 where the IWUL
	registration only is required), and water use licenses		will be discussed to make the necessary
	(water used for which both registration and licensing		amendments to the IWUL to ensure it is up to
	is required). An existing lawful water use is any		date.
	water use that commenced 2 years or more prior to		
	the NWA and authorised under the old Act. These		
	water uses are deemed lawful. In 1999, the GN 704		
	Regulations i.t.o. NWA was published. These		
	Regulations pertained to all mining rights, and		
	exemptions of water uses if necessary.		
NEMWA	Waste management permits for certain waste		The establishment or reclamation of a residue
GNR 633	activities were required form 1989 i.t.o. the ECA.		stockpile or residue deposit resulting from
Category B(11)	These permits were repealed by the publishing of		activities which require a mining right,
	the first listed waste management activities		exploration right or production right in terms of
	licensing in 2009 (GN 718 of 2009 i.t.o. NEMWA).		the Mineral and Petroleum Resources
	These listings were replaced by new listings in 2013		Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002).
	(GN 921 of 2013 i.t.o. NEMWA). If a site has a		This requires the mine to conduct an EIA and
	permit under ECA, this is still applicable until the		waste license application which the mine has
	National Department of Environmental Affairs		already submitted as part of the Section 102
	(NDEA) requests an update under the new		amendment.
	legislation (NEMWA).		



Applicable legislation and	Description of legislation and guidelines used to	Reference	How does this development comply with
guidelines used to compile the	compile the report (reference and description)	where applied	and respond to the policy and legislative
report			context (significance)
National Heritage Resources Act no	All required permits as per the Act.	Not applicable	In the event of any heritage resource
25 of 1999 (NHRA)			discovered, a qualified specialist will be
			appointed.
Section 15(1) of the National Forest	No person may cut, disturb, damage or destroy any	Not applicable	A specialist will conduct a study on site to
Act No 84 of 1998 (NFA)	protected tree; or possess, collect, remove,		establish the influence of activities on the
	transport, export, purchase, sell, donate or in any		environment and to identify all alien invasive
	other manner acquire or dispose of any protected		and indigenous vegetation that are applicable.
	tree, or any forest product derived from a protected		
	tree, except under a licence granted by the Minister.		
Mining		l	
Mining plans and surveying:	A competent person must survey the mine.	N/A	Hattingh Surveyors did the mapping for the
GN 447 of 2011 i.t.o. the Mine Health			mine
and Safety Act No 29 of 1996 (as	No mining operations may be carried out within a	N/A	
amended) (MHSA)	horizontal distance of 100m from reserve land,		The mine must compile risk assessment to
	buildings, roads, railways, dams, waste dumps, or		assess whether any mining operations are
	any other structure whatsoever including such		carried out within a horizontal distance of
	structures beyond the mining boundaries, or any		100m from the mentioned infrastructure.
	surface, which it may be necessary to protect in		
	order to prevent any significant risk, unless a lesser		
	distance has been determined safe by risk		
	assessment and all restrictions and conditions		
	determined in terms of the risk assessment are		
	complied with.		
Mine residue			



Applicable legislation and	Description of legislation and guidelines used to	Reference	How does this development comply with
guidelines used to compile the	compile the report (reference and description)	where applied	and respond to the policy and legislative
report			context (significance)
Mine residue management:	The assessment of impacts relating to the	N/A	The impacts of the mine residue are contained
Regulation 73 of the MPRDR (GN 349	management of residue deposits must form part of		within the mine's EIA/EMP. The reclamation
of 2011 i.t.o. MPRDA), GN 632 of	the EMP.		of the mine residue forms part of this EIA/EMP.
2015 i.t.o. NEMWA.			
Mine residue management -	A risk analysis based on the characteristics and the	N/A	Although a Waste Assessment Report was
Assessment of impacts and analyses	classification must be used to determine the		conducted for the mine residue in Annesley
of risks	appropriate mitigation and management measures.		Operation, this does not include a risk
Regulations 3 & 9(1)(a&g) & 12 of GN			assessment with appropriate mitigation and
632 of 2015 (Regulations Regarding			management measures.
the Planning and Management of	The decommissioning, closure and post-closure	N/A	The decommissioning, closure and post-
Mine Residue) under NEMWA,	management of mine residue must be done in		closure management of mine residue forms
regulation 8 of GN 634 of 2013 (Waste	accordance with the relevant provisions in the		part of the EIA/EMP.
Classification and Management	environmental authorisation, an EMP; and any other		
Regulations) under NEMWA, GN 632	relevant legislation.		
of 2015 has replaced regulation 73 of	The pollution control barrier system shall be defined	N/A	This EIA and WL forms part of the assessment
GN 527 of 2004 under MPRDA. Refer	by the: GN 635 of 2013 under NEMWA (National		of the pollution control barrier system.
to transitional period	Norms and Standards for the Assessment of Waste		
	for Landfill Disposal); and GN 636 of 2013 (National		
	Norms and Standards for Disposal of Waste to		
	Landfill).		
Mine residue management:	Mine residue must be characterised to identify any	N/A	A registered engineer is appointed as the
Regulation 4 of GN 632 of 2015 under	potentially significant health or safety hazard and		competent person on dams and residue.
NEMWA (Regulations Regarding the	environmental impact that may be associated with		
	the residue when deposited.		



Applicable legislation and	Description of legislation and guidelines used to	Reference	How does this development comply with
guidelines used to compile the	compile the report (reference and description)	where applied	and respond to the policy and legislative
report			context (significance)
Planning and Management of Mine	Mine residue must be characterised in terms of its	N/A	The waste assessment has been done by
Residue) under NEMWA	physical characteristics; chemical characteristics;		Aquatico and includes these requirements.
	and mineral content that may include the specific		
	gravity of the residue particles and its impact on		
	particle segregation and consolidation.		
	Mine residue must be classified in accordance with	N/A	Although a Waste Assessment Report was
	SANS 10234 within 180 days of generation.		compiled, it does not include the GHS
			classification.
Mine residue management -	A risk analysis must be conducted and documented	N/A	The waste assessment has been done by
Characterisation	on all mine residue.		Aquatico and includes these requirements.
Regulation 5 of GN 632 of 2015	The classification of residue stockpile and residue	N/A	
(Regulations Regarding the Planning	deposit must be undertaken on the basis of the:		
and Management of Mine Residue)	characteristics of the residue;		
under NEMWA	location and dimensions of the deposit (height,		
	surface area);		
	• importance and vulnerability of the		
	environmental components that are at risk;		
	spatial extent, duration and intensity of		
	potential impacts; and		
	pollution control barrier system compliant with the		
	commensurate norms and standards for disposal of		
	waste to landfill.		
Mine residue management -	The process of investigation and selection of a site	N/A	This was not done for any of the sites,
Investigation and site selection	mine residue must entail:		however, no new mine residue will be
			established.



Applicable legislation and	Description of legislation and guidelines used to	Reference	How does this development comply with
guidelines used to compile the	compile the report (reference and description)	where applied	and respond to the policy and legislative
report			context (significance)
Regulation 6 of GN 632 of 2015	the identification of a sufficient number of		
(Regulations Regarding the Planning	possible candidate sites.		
and Management of Mine Residue)	qualitative evaluation and ranking of all		
under NEMWA	alternative sites;		
	Qualitative investigation of the top-ranking sites to		
	review the ranking done in terms of paragraph(b);		
	a feasibility study on the highest-ranking site or		
	sites, involving:		
	o a preliminary health and safety		
	classification;		
	<ul> <li>an environmental classification;</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>geotechnical investigations; and</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>hydrological investigations.</li> </ul>		
	Further investigation on the preferred site, must be		
	conducted by competent person		
Mine residue management:	The design of the residue stockpile and deposit shall	N/A	No designs according to this legislation were
Regulations 7 & 9(1)(b) of GN 632 of	be undertaken by a competent person. The process		undertaken. This cannot be done anymore but
2015 (Regulations Regarding the	of investigation and selection of a site for residue		must form part of any new mine residue
Planning and Management of Mine	stockpiling and residue deposits must entail several		planning.
Residue) under NEMWA	factors as per the legislation. This will include		
	geotechnical investigations and groundwater		
	investigations. From these investigations, a		
	preferred site must be identified. Further		
	investigation on the preferred site is also necessary.		
	This must be carried out by a competent person. A		



Applicable legislation and	Description of legislation and guidelines used to	Reference	How does this development comply with
guidelines used to compile the	compile the report (reference and description)	where applied	and respond to the policy and legislative
report			context (significance)
	competent person must be qualified by virtue of his		
	or her knowledge, expertise, qualifications, skills		
	and experience; and is familiar with the provisions		
	of the Act and other related legislation and has been		
	trained to recognize any potential or actual problem		
	in the performance of the work.		
Mine residue management - Impact	Conduct statistical defensible and representative	N/A	Although a Waste Assessment Report was
Management	characterisation programme of relevant materials		compiled, it does not include a statistical
Regulation 8 of GN 632 of 2015			defensible and representative characterisation
(Regulations Regarding the Planning			programme of relevant materials.
and Management of Mine Residue)	Conduct an impact prediction study to assess the	N/A	Currently, no studies were conducted to
under NEMWA	potential impacts of such actions or activities on the		assess the impact of reclamation. However,
	water resource over the full life cycle of the mining		the company GPT will conduct a study on
	operations and until the impact from the operation is		groundwater pollution plume for quarry 6 and
	acceptable, which includes a monitoring		7.
	programme and an evaluation of the effect of the		
	mitigatory measures to demonstrate acceptable		
	levels of impact.		
Mine residue management - Impact	Preventative or remedial action must be taken in	N/A	The mine has an environmental emergency
Management	respect of any sign of pollution.		procedure.
Regulations 9(1)(d-f)&(2) & 11 of GN	Adequate measures must be implemented to	Part A(h)(v)	This will form part of the mine's management
632 of 2015 (Regulations Regarding	control dust pollution and erosion of the slopes at all		measures.
the Planning and Management of	residues.		
Mine Residue) under NEMWA	Dust and mine residue must be managed in		This will form part of the mine's management
	accordance with the requirements on dust control as		measures.



Applicable legislation and	Description of legislation and guidelines used to	Reference	How does this development comply with
guidelines used to compile the	compile the report (reference and description)	where applied	and respond to the policy and legislative
report			context (significance)
	regulated by Mine Health and Safety Act and in		
	terms of the NEMAQA.		
	A system of routine maintenance and repair in		This will form part of the mine's management
	respect of all residues must be implemented to		measures.
	ensure the control of pollution and the integrity of		
	rehabilitation.		
Mine residue management -	A monitoring system for a mining residue with	N/A	As part of monitoring, the mine will ensure the
Monitoring and reporting system	respect to potentially significant impacts as		proper management of residue stockpiles and
Regulation 9(1)(c) & 10 of GN 632 of	identified in the EIA must be included		ensure that the tailings disposal facilities
2015 (Regulations Regarding the			conform to measurement systems and correct
Planning and Management of Mine			standards as set out in this EMP.
Residue) under NEMWA			
Rehabilitation and closure			
Section 24R of NEMA, Appendix 5 of	A closure plan must be submitted 5 years before	This entire ESR	The LoM for Annesley is more than 5 years.
the EIA Regulations, sections 43, 56,	closure to DMR and NDEA. An EMP and		
61 of MPRDA	rehabilitation plan must be submitted 5 years before		
	commencing with closure to DWS. Closure		
	objectives form part of the draft EMP and must		
	identify the key objectives for mine closure to guide		
	the project design, development and management		
	of environmental impacts; provide broad future land		
	use objective(s) for the site and provide proposed		
	closure costs. Imerys must ensure that details of		
	rehabilitation of the residue deposit are provided in		
	the EMP.		



Applicable legislation and	Description of legislation and guidelines used to	Reference	How does this development comply with
guidelines used to compile the	compile the report (reference and description)	where applied	and respond to the policy and legislative
report			context (significance)
Financial provision			
Section 24P of the NEMA,	The EMP must address the requirements as	Part A(s)	The financial provision is updated annually.
Regulations pertaining to financial	determined in the regulations, pertaining to the		
provisioning for prospecting,	financial provision for the rehabilitation. The mine		
exploration, mining, or production	must annually update and review the quantum of the		
operations (GN 1147 of 2015 i.t.o.	financial provision in consultation with a competent		
NEMA	person, as required in terms of the approved EMP,		
	or as requested by the Minister.		
Non-mining waste management			,
Waste classification and disposal	Safety data sheets	N/A	This is not in contracts
Regulation 5 of GN 634 of 2013	Generators of hazardous waste must ensure		
(Waste Classification and	that an MSDS for the hazardous waste is		
Management Regulations) under	prepared in accordance with SANS 10234.		
NEMWA	If possible, use MSDS of product or products it		
	originates from.		
	No MSDS necessary for Health Care Risk		
	Waste.		
Waste classification and disposal	A waste generator shall, as far as is reasonably		
Regulation 15(d) of GN 1179 of 1995	practicable ensure that all HCS waste which can		
(Hazardous Chemical Substances	cause exposure, is disposed of only on sites		
Regulations) under OHSA	specifically designated for this purpose in terms of		
	the ECA (or NEMA), in such a manner that it does		
	not cause a hazard inside or outside the site		
	concerned.		



Applicable legislation and	Description of legislation and guidelines used to	Reference	How does this development comply with
guidelines used to compile the	compile the report (reference and description)	where applied	and respond to the policy and legislative
report			context (significance)
	No person may collect waste for removal from		
	premises unless such person is authorised by law		
	to collect that waste, where authorisation is		
	required.		
Waste classification and disposal	Waste generators must keep accurate and up to		
Regulation 10 of GN 634 of 2013	date records of the management of the waste they		
(Waste Classification and	generate, which records must reflect:		
Management Regulations) under	• the classification of the wastes;		
NEMWA	• the quantity of each waste generated,		
	expressed in tons or m³ per month;		
	• the quantities of each waste that has either		
	been re-used, recycled, recovered, treated or		
	disposed of; and		
	by whom the waste was managed.		
	The records must be retained for a period of at least		
	five (5) years, and made available to the		
	Department upon request.		
Waste classification and disposal	Every holder of waste that has been classified as		
Regulation 11 of GN 634 of 2013	hazardous must be in possession of a waste		
(Waste Classification and	manifest document containing the relevant		
Management Regulations) under	information		
NEMWA	Generators of waste classified as hazardous must		
	complete a waste manifest document for each		
	consignment of waste transported to a waste		
	manager or waste transporter.		



Applicable legislation and	Description of legislation and guidelines used to	Reference	How does this development comply with
guidelines used to compile the	compile the report (reference and description)	where applied	and respond to the policy and legislative
report			context (significance)
	All waste generators of hazardous waste must:		
	retain copies, or be able to access copies/records,		
	of the waste manifest documentation for a period of		
	at least five (5) years; and		
	make the waste manifest documentation available		
	to the Department upon request.		
Waste handling, and storage:	Employees collecting, transporting, and disposal of	N/A	This will form part of the mine's management
GN 527 of 2004 i.t.o. MPRDA, GN	hazardous waste must wear suitable Personal		measures. Spill handling procedure (AAM-EP-
1179 i.t.o. OHSA, sections 7 & 24 of	Protective Equipment (PPE). A waste disposal		02) and Environmental Emergency Response
NEMWA, and GN 634 of 2013 i.t.o.	contractor must wear suitable PPE. All collectable		Plans are in place
NEMWA	hazardous waste must be placed into containers		
	that will prevent the likelihood of exposure during		
	handling. Waste containers must be intact and not		
	corroded or in any other way rendered unfit for the		
	safe storage of waste. Adequate measures must be		
	taken to prevent accidental spillage or leaking.		
	Waste must be contained in such a way that it		
	cannot be blown away. Avoid nuisances such as		
	odor, visual impacts, and breeding of vectors.		
	Prevent pollution of the environment and harm to		
	health. Any container or storage impoundment		
	holding waste must be labeled, or where labeling is		
	not possible, records must be kept. A new waste		
	storage facility must be registered with the		
	competent authority within 90 days prior to the		



Applicable legislation and	Description of legislation and guidelines used to	Reference	How does this development comply with
guidelines used to compile the	compile the report (reference and description)	where applied	and respond to the policy and legislative
report			context (significance)
	construction taking place. The assessment of		
	impacts relating to the disposal of waste material		
	must form part of the EMP.		
Waste handling, and storage:	A waste generator shall, as far as is reasonably	N/A	This is not in the contracts.
Regulation 15(f) of GN 1179	practicable ensure that if the services of a waste		
(Hazardous Chemical Substances	disposal contractor are used, a provision is		
Regulations) under OHSA, Regulation	incorporated into the contract stating that the		
13 of GN 926 of 2013 (National norms	contractor shall also comply with the provisions of		
and standards for the storage of	these regulations.		
waste) under NEMWA			
Waste handling, and storage	Any container or storage impoundment holding	N/A	This is not necessary as the mine will not be
Regulation 6 of GN 634 of 2013	waste must be labeled, or where labeling is not		storing hazardous waste in covered
(Waste Classification and	possible, records must be kept.		
Management Regulations) under	Hazardous waste must be stored in covered		
NEMWA & Regulation 10 of GN 926	containers and only open when waste is added or		
of 2013 (National norms and	emptied.		
standards for the storage of waste)			
under NEMWA			
Waste re-use, recycle, recover:	Waste must be re-used, recycled, recovered,	N/A	Waste is removed from the site via a waste
GN 527 of 2004 i.t.o. MPRDA,	treated and/or disposed of within 18 months of		contractor. No recycling takes place on the
sections 7 & 24 of NEMWA, and GN	generation. Recycle hazardous waste as far as is		mine.
634 of 2013 i.t.o. NEMWA	reasonably practicable. Any person who undertakes		
	an activity involving the reduction, re-use, recycling		
	or recovery of waste must, before undertaking that		
	activity, ensure that the reduction, re-use, recycling		



Applicable legislation and	Description of legislation and guidelines used to	Reference	How does this development comply with
guidelines used to compile the	compile the report (reference and description)	where applied	and respond to the policy and legislative
report			context (significance)
	or recovery of the waste use less natural resources		
	than disposal of such waste and to the extent that it		
	is possible, is less harmful to the environment than		
	the disposal of such waste.		
Unlawful disposal and littering:	No disposal of waste in or on any land, waterbody	N/A	This will form part of the mine's management
Sections 26 & 27 of NEMWA	or at any facility. No disposal of waste in a manner		measures. The mine has an Environmental
	that is likely to cause pollution of the environment or		Emergency Response Plan which deals with
	harm to health and well-being. No littering of any		these cases.
	public place, land, vacant erf, stream, watercourse,		
	street or road, or on any place to which the general		
	public has access. Unless the disposal of that waste		
	is authorised by law		
Waste tyres:	All requirements	N/A	The mine does not store tyres.
Regulations in terms of storage of			
tyres (GN 149 of 2009 i.t.o NEMWA)			
Asbestos management and disposal:	Ensure that all asbestos waste is placed in	N/A	The mine does not have asbestos waste.
GN 341 of 2008 i.t.o. ECA, and	containers that will prevent the likelihood of		
regulation 20 of GN 155 of 2001 i.t.o	exposure during handling. All vehicles, re-usable		
OHSAS	containers or any other similar articles which have		
	been in contact with asbestos waste must be		
	cleaned and decontaminated after use. All		
	asbestos waste which can cause exposure must be		
	disposed of only on sites specifically designated for		
	this purpose. All persons occupied in the collection,		
	transport, and disposing of waste in a manner which		



Applicable legislation and	Description of legislation and guidelines used to	Reference	How does this development comply with
guidelines used to compile the	compile the report (reference and description)	where applied	and respond to the policy and legislative
report			context (significance)
	may detrimentally impact on a water resource,		
	disposal of asbestos waste, must wear PPE,		
	including contractors.		
Water management			
Water management and pollution	An assessment of impacts relating to water	N/A	The impacts of water pollution are contained
control:	management and pollution control at mining		within the mine's EIA/EMP. The mine
GN 527 of 2004 i.t.o. MPRDA	operations must form part of the EMP.		implements Spill handling procedure (AAM-
Water management and pollution	No TDF shall be established on the bank of any		EP-02) and an Environmental Emergency
control:	stream, river, dam, pan, wetland or lake without		Response Plan to ensure no water resources
GN 704 Regulations of 1999 i.t.o.	written permission and upon such conditions as		are impacted.
NWA	determined and as approved in the EMP. Toilet		·
	facilities shall be located in such a manner that no		
	water or other pollution is caused. GN 704		
	Regulations of 1999 i.t.o. NWA place: restrictions on		
	locality; restrictions on the use of material; capacity		
	requirements of clean and dirty water systems;		
	protection of water resources; and security and		
	additional measures.		
Water management and pollution	A mine must ensure that preventative or remedial	N/A	The mine has an environmental emergency
control	action is taken in respect of any sign of pollution.		procedure.
Regulation 9 of GN 632 of 2015			
(Regulations regarding the planning			
and management of residue			
stockpiles and residue deposits)			
under NEMWA, Regulation 68 of GN			



Applicable legislation and	Description of legislation and guidelines used to	Reference	How does this development comply with
guidelines used to compile the	compile the report (reference and description)	where applied	and respond to the policy and legislative
report			context (significance)
527 of 2004 (Mineral and Petroleum			
Resources Development Regulations)			
under MPRDA			
Dams with safety risks	All residue stockpiles and deposits must be	N/A	The mine does not have an environmental
Sections 117-123 of NWA	classified into one or a combination of the following		classification for the mine residue.
	categories: (1) the safety classification to		
	differentiate between residue stockpiles and		
	deposits of high, medium and low hazard based on		
	their potential to cause harm to life or property; and		
	(2) the environmental classification to differentiate		
	between residue stockpiles and deposits.		
	A mine must within the period specified, provide the		
	Minister with any information, drawings,		
	specifications, design assumptions, calculations,		
	documents and test results requested by the		
	Minister, pertaining to dams with a safety risk.		
Hazardous chemical substances ma	nagement		
Use, storage, and handling:	A Hazardous chemical substance (HCS) in storage	N/A	This will form part of the mine's management
Regulation 14 of GN1179 of 1995	or distributed must be properly identified, classified		measures. The mine follows their Waste
under OHSAS, GN 1381 of 1994, GN	and handled in accordance with SABS 072 and		Management Procedure: AAM-EP-01
247 of 1993, and GN 690 of 1989	SABS 0228. A container or a vehicle in which an		
under the Hazardous Substances Act	HCS is transported must be clearly identified,		
No 15 of 1973 (as amended) (HSA)	classified and packed in accordance with SABS		
	0228 and SABS 0229. Any container into which an		
	HCS is decanted must be clearly labeled with regard		



Applicable legislation and	Description of legislation and guidelines used to	Reference	How does this development comply with
guidelines used to compile the	compile the report (reference and description)	where applied	and respond to the policy and legislative
report			context (significance)
	to the contents thereof. Hazardous substances		
	must also be classified according to the Hazardous		
	Substances Regulations (GN 453 of 1977) i.t.o the		
	Hazardous Substances Act No 15 of 1973.		
Transportation:	No person shall except as prescribed, accept after	N/A	Due to the number of requirements as set out
Section 54 of National Road Traffic	transportation, any prescribed dangerous goods.		in these regulations, it is unclear whether this
Act No 93 0f 1996 (NRTA), regulation	The NRTA and regulations place strict obligations		is in place.
277 of GN 255 of 2000 under NRTA	on the "consignee", "consignor, "driver" and		
	"operator" during transportation. Imerys is in the		
	position of the "consignee" due to the off-loading.		
Polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB):	PCBs must be phased out.	N/A	There is no phasing-out plan yet in place.
GN 549 of 2014 I.t.o. NEMA			
Radioactive sources:	The possession and use of Group IV hazardous	N/A	There are no such sources on the mine.
Section 3A of the HAS, GN 246 & 247	substances require a written authority in terms of the		
of 1993 i.t.o HSA	HSA.		
Air quality management			
Ambient air quality management	Limits and compliance for SO2, NO2, PM10, O3,	N/A	There are none necessary as the remining of
Regulation 64 of GN 527 of 2004	C6H6, Pb, CO, PM2.5		the slimes dam will not affect ambient air
(Mineral and Petroleum Resources			quality standards.
Development Regulations) under			
MPRDA, GN 1210 of 2009 (National			
Ambient Air Quality Standards) & GN			
486 of 2012 (National Ambient Air			
Quality Standard for PM Less than 2.5			
Micron Metres) under NEMAQA			



Applicable legislation and	Description of legislation and guidelines used to	Reference	How does this development comply with
guidelines used to compile the	compile the report (reference and description)	where applied	and respond to the policy and legislative
report			context (significance)
Ambient air quality management	Hydrochlorofluorocarbons are phased-out.	N/A	Annesley is not yet phasing out old air
GN 351 of 2014 (Regulations			conditioners
Regarding the Phasing-out and			
Management of Ozone- Depleting			
Substances) under NEMAQA			
Dust control	A mine must ensure that adequate measures are	N/A	This will form part of the mine's management
Regulations 9(f) & 11 of GN 632 of	implemented to control dust pollution and erosion of		measures. Long-term erosion and dust control
2015 (Regulations Regarding the	the slopes at all residues.		will be achieved by the re-vegetation of spoil
Planning and Management of			and bare areas with a combination of creeping
Residue Stockpiles and Residue			and tufted grass species.
Deposits) under NEMWA			
Atmospheric impact report and air	Atmospheric impact report and air dispersion	N/A	The mine has an atmospheric impact report
dispersion modeling	modeling only if required from officer or if applying		and air dispersion modeling in place.
GN 747 of 2013 (Regulations	for Air emissions license (AEL).		
Prescribing the Format of the			
Atmospheric Impact Report) & GN			
533 of 2014 (Regulations Regarding			
Air Dispersion Modelling) under			
NEMAQA			
Environmental noise control and	The mine must comply with the provisions of the	N/A	This will form part of the mine's management
management:	MHSA. The assessment of impacts relating to noise		measures. Some structures that have been
Regulation 66 of GN 572 of 2004 i.t.o.	pollution management and control, where		damaged due to mining activities (blasting and
MPRDA, section 34 of NEMAQA,	appropriate, must form part of the EMP No person		shock) will be identified and appropriate action
Sections 25 & 26 of ECA, and GN 154	shall make, produce or cause a disturbing noise, or		initiated prior to the mining operations closing.
of 1992 i.t.o. ECA	allow it to be made, produced or caused by any		



Applicable legislation and	Description of legislation and guidelines used to	Reference	How does this development comply with
guidelines used to compile the	compile the report (reference and description)	where applied	and respond to the policy and legislative
report			context (significance)
	person, animal, machine, device or apparatus or		
	any combination thereof. No person shall drive a		
	vehicle on a public road in such a manner that it may		
	cause a noise nuisance.		
Noxious or offensive gases:	No vehicle may be driven on a public road if the	N/A	This is very old legislation, there is no new
Section 35 of NEMAQA, GN 1651 of	noxious gases emitted have a density or content as		such legislation – technology also old?
1974 i.t.o. APPA	to produce a mean reading of 70 or more.		
Blasting, vibration and shock	The mine must comply with the provisions of the	N/A	No blasting takes place.
management, and control:	MHSA. An assessment of impacts relating to		
Regulation 67 of GN 572 of 2004 i.t.o.	blasting, vibration and shock management and		
MPRDA	control, where applicable, must form part of the		
	EMP.		
Biodiversity management			
Alien and invasive species	Category 1a Listed Invasive Species must be	N/A	The mine needs an alien eradication plan. A
GN598 of 2014 (Alien and Invasive	combatted or eradicated. Category 1b Listed		specialist will go out to site on the 23rd July
Species Regulations) & GN864 of	Invasive Species must be controlled. Category 2		2018 to identify alien invasive and identify the
2016 (Alien and Invasive Species	Listed Invasive Species require a permit to carry out		controls needed for the appropriate
Lists) under NEMBA	a restricted activity within an area specified in the		eradication.
	Notice or an area specified in the permit. Category		
	3 Listed Invasive Species are subject to exemption.		
Fire breaks and firefighting:	Every owner on whose land a veldfire may start or	N/A	All vehicles and equipment at the mine are
Sections 12, 13, 17, 18 & 34 of	burn or from whose land it may spread, must		regularly inspected and maintained. The
National Veld and Forest Fire Act No	prepare and maintain a firebreak on his/her side of		emergency plan includes the prevention and
101 of 1998 (NVFFA)	the boundary between his/her land and any		control of veld fires.
	adjoining land. Every owner must have the		



Applicable legislation and	Description of legislation and guidelines used to	Reference	How does this development comply with
guidelines used to compile the	compile the report (reference and description)	where applied	and respond to the policy and legislative
report			context (significance)
	appropriate equipment and measures in place to be		
	ready to be able to combat veld fires and must be in		
	a position to report the occurrence of fires and to		
	take such measures as may be necessary to		
	combat such fires.		
Acquisition, disposal, sale or use of	Prohibition of certain pesticides and herbicides.	N/A	This will form part of the mine's management
fertilizers, farm feeds, agricultural			measures. A specialist will go out to site on the
remedies and stock remedies:			23rd July 2018 to identify alien invasive
Section 7bis of Fertilizers, Farm			species and identify the controls applicable to
Feeds, Agricultural Remedies and			the species and those allowed in the area.
Stock Remedies Act No 36 of 1947			
(FFFARSRA)			
Soil management			
Contaminated land:	The assessment of impacts relating to soil pollution	N/A	This will form part of the mine's management
GN 527 of 2004 i.t.o. MPRDA, and	and erosion control must form part of both the EMP.		measures. The mine will dispose of
sections 35-41 of NEMWA	The acidification, salination and mineralisation of		contaminated material as hazardous waste
	soils through seepage of polluted water must take		(see Waste Management Procedure: AAM-
	place as approved in the EMP. The spillage of		EP-01) to ensure spillage into the soil does not
	hazardous chemicals onto soils or its escape or		occur and will, as soon as reasonably
	migration into surrounding soils from the approved		practicable after knowledge of the incident
	deposition area must be prevented. Oils, grease,		take all reasonable measures to contain and
	and hydraulic fluids must be disposed of. Oils,		minimise the effects of the incident, including
	grease, and hydraulic fluid spills must be cleaned up		its effects on the environment and any risks
	by removing all contaminated soil and disposing		posed by the incident to the health, safety and
	such soil in a waste disposal receptacle or at a		property of persons.



Applicable legislation and	Description of legislation and guidelines used to	Reference	How does this development comply with
guidelines used to compile the	compile the report (reference and description)	where applied	and respond to the policy and legislative
report			context (significance)
	licensed facility. The chemical and physical		
	properties of topsoil to be used for the purposes of		
	rehabilitation must not be changed by introducing		
	foreign material, gravel, rock, rubble or mine residue		
	to such soil. An owner of land that is significantly		
	contaminated, or a person who undertakes an		
	activity that caused the land to be significantly		
	contaminated, must notify the department of that		
	contamination as soon as that person becomes		
	aware, of that contamination		
Heritage resources management			
Section 52 of MPRDA, and Sections	An EMP must include impacts on heritage aspects.	N/A	Already existing infrastructure to be used
34 & 35 of National Heritage	No person may alter or demolish any structure or		therefore no impact on Archaeological,
Resources Act No 25 of 1999 (NHRA)	part of a structure which is older than 60 years		historical and cultural aspects.
	without a permit issued by the relevant provincial		
	heritage resources authority. Any person who		
	discovers archaeological or palaeontological		
	objects or material or a meteorite must immediately		
	report the find to the responsible heritage resources		
	authority, or to the nearest local authority offices or		
	museum, which must immediately notify such		
	heritage resources authority.		
Emergency incidents	•		
Section 30 of NEMA, section 20 of	In the event of an emergency, the mine must: report	N/A	The mine has an environmental emergency
NWA S20, and Section 18 of NVFFA	through the most effective means reasonably		procedure. This procedure will be
			ı



Applicable legislation and	Description of legislation and guidelines used to	Reference	How does this development comply with
guidelines used to compile the	compile the report (reference and description)	where applied	and respond to the policy and legislative
report			context (significance)
	available; take all reasonable measures to contain		implemented, and this will be audited as part
	and minimise the effects of the incident, including its		of the legal compliance audit.
	effects on the environment and any risks posed by		
	the incident to the health, safety and property of		
	persons; undertake clean-up procedures; remedy		
	the effects of the incident; and assess the		
	immediate and long-term effects of the incident on		
	the environment and public health.		
	Any owner who has reason to believe that a fire on		
	his or her land or the land of an adjoining owner may		
	endanger life, property or the environment, must		
	immediately notify the fire protection officer or, any		
	member of the executive committee of the fire		
	protection association, if one exists for the area; and		
	the owners of adjoining land; and do everything in		
	his or her power to stop the spread of the fire.		
Sustainable development			
Sustainable development principles:	Any mining operation must be conducted in	N/A	The mine has recently updated their
Section 2(3 & 4), of NEMA, section 2,	accordance with generally accepted principles of		environmental procedures. The mine also has
2(a)(ii), 22(2)(d) of NWA, GN 527 of	sustainable development by integrating social,		an amended Social and Labour Plan (SLP) in
2004 i.t.o. MPRDA, section 37 of	economic and environmental factors into the		place for the year 2018-2022. The LoM is more
MPRDA, section 2(a)(ii) of Section 2(3	planning and implementation of mining in order to		than 5 years, however, the mine is compiles
& 4) of NEMA, section 2 of NWA,	ensure that exploitation of mineral resources serves		annual rehabilitation plans and update the
section of, and section of NWA	present and future generations. The mine shall		financial provision annually as part of the new



Applicable legislation and	Description of legislation and guidelines used to	Reference	How does this development comply with
guidelines used to compile the	compile the report (reference and description)	where applied	and respond to the policy and legislative
report			context (significance)
	investigate new and emerging technologies and put		NEMA requirements. This plan will include end
	into practice water efficient devices or applied		land use.
	technique for the re-use of water containing waste.		
	The Closure Plan must include agreed standard or		
	land use which conforms with the concept of		
	sustainable development.		
International conventions/treaties	Convention on Biological Diversity, ratified by RSA	N/A	The mine must make a list of these chemicals
	on 2 November 1995: Conservation of biological		if there are any on the mine. If there are no
	diversity, the sustainable use of its components.		such chemicals on the mine, keep proof of this.
	UN Framework on Climate Change and Kyoto		
	Protocol, ratified by RSA on 29 August 1997: The		
	NDEA has published a report on 'A national climate		
	change response strategy" in response to the Kyoto		
	Protocol'. Greenhouse gas emissions and		
	inventories will be specifically dealt with in the		
	NEMAQA. Climate change is referred to explicitly in		
	the White Paper on Integrated Pollution and Waste		
	Management in 2000 and referenced in the White		
	Paper on a National Water Policy for South Africa,		
	1997. It is also specifically addressed in the		
	Government's imminent National Water Resource		
	Strategy.' Greenhouse gases are only included		
	under AEL requirements in the NEMAQA.		



Applicable legislation and	Description of legislation and guidelines used to	Reference	How does this development comply with
guidelines used to compile the	compile the report (reference and description)	where applied	and respond to the policy and legislative
report			context (significance)
	Stockholm Convention on Persistent Organic		
	Pollutants, ratified by RSA on 4 September 2002:		
	Persistent organic pollutants (POPs) include		
	various insecticides as well as PCBs. South Africa		
	published a report 'National Implementation Plan for		
	the Stockholm Convention on Persistent Organic		
	Pollutants' in 2012. According to this report, the duty		
	of care covers the responsibility of Imerys to avoid		
	the use, storage, generation, or uncontrolled		
	disposal thereof.		
	Vienna Convention on the Protection of the Ozone		
	Layer, and the Montreal Protocol, ratified by RSA on		
	15 January 1990: The Montreal Protocol includes		
	ozone depleting substances as well as a list of		
	products containing these substances. On 18		
	September 2015, the NDEA published a notice (GN		
	703 of 2015), requesting all companies to submit		
	information regarding the listed chemicals as per		
	Annex A within 60 days from the publication. 17		
	November 2015.		
	The Convention on Wetlands of International		
	Importance especially as Waterfowl Habitat 1971		
	(Ramsar Convention). South Africa ratified Ramsar		



Applicable legislation and	Description of legislation and guidelines used to	Reference	How does this development comply with
guidelines used to compile the	compile the report (reference and description)	where applied	and respond to the policy and legislative
report			context (significance)
	in March 1975. The objectives of the Convention		
	are:		
	to stem the progressive encroachment on and		
	loss of wetlands now and in the future,		
	recognising the fundamental ecological		
	functions of wetlands and their economic,		
	cultural, scientific and recreational value;		
	to encourage the 'wise use' of the world's		
	wetland resources; and		
	to co-ordinate international efforts for this		
	purpose.		



## f) Need and desirability of the proposed activities

As per the Guideline on Needs and Desirability in terms of the EIA Regulations (published 20 October 2014), the following table has been compiled:

Table 5: Need and Desirability of the proposed project

Guideline requirement	Comments on requirement
1. How will this development (and its separate elements/a	aspects) impact on the ecological integrity of the area?
1.1 How were the following ecological integrity considerate	ions taken into account?
1.1.1 Threatened Ecosystems.	The mine falls within the Sekhukune Norite Bushveld
	which is classed as an endangered ecosystem. The
	mine has rehabilitation plan in place to mitigate any
	impacts that are caused. The reclamation of mine
	residue will not impact on this threatened ecosystem.
1.1.2 Sensitive, vulnerable, highly dynamic or stressed	An aquatic ecosystem delineation was conducted for a
ecosystems, such as coastal shores, estuaries,	river diversion on site. No other delineations have been
wetlands, and similar systems require specific attention	conducted.
in management and planning procedures, especially	
where they are subject to significant human resource	
usage and development pressure.	
1.1.3 Critical Biodiversity Areas ("CBAs") and Ecological	The activities taking place are not within any CBAs or
Support Areas ("ESAs").	ESAs.
1.1.4 Conservation targets.	The spatial development framework guides and informs
	all decision of the municipality relating to land use
	development and land planning. It guides and informs
	the direction of growth, major movement routes, special
	development areas and conservation of areas. Areas of
	specific conservational importance are identified and are
	targeted in the SDF for management. Water
	conservation is also of particular concern in the SDF.
	Similarly, to the conservation targets, the mine has a
	rehabilitation plan that will ensure the land is remediated
	for use by the community, flora and fauna and water
	management is ensured.
1.1.5 Ecological drivers of the ecosystem.	The ecological driver focused on in the SDF are grasses.
	Many grasses in the area have good grazing value and
	others perform a multitude of useful ecological functions,
	for example to bind soil. Grass species composition is
	also an indicator of vegetation condition. The mine has
	further identified ecological drivers through specialist



Guideline requirement	Comments on requirement
	studies. As part of rehabilitation, re-vegetation is to take
	place which will ensure the establishment of grasses.
1.1.6 Environmental Management Framework.	The Sekhukhune Municipality District has developed an
	Integrated Environmental Management Plan (DIEMP)
	that needs to be approved by Council. The district still
	needs to have Environmental Inspectors in its territory to
	preserve the biodiversity and its natural resources.
	The mine has developed its own management measures
	in line with the project based on specialist studies to
	ensure combability with the ecological integrity of the
	surrounding environment.
1.1.7 Spatial Development Framework (SDF),.	The Sekhukhune Municipality District has an existing
	Spatial Development Framework which allocates a
	budget to ensure the environment stays clean. The mine
	also has a budget for rehabilitation for the project. This
	resonates with the objective of the SDF.
1.1.8 Global and international responsibilities relating to	The mine ensures compliance to environmental
the environment (e.g. RAMSAR sites, Climate Change,	legislation which often encompasses objectives of
etc.).	environmental treaties.
1.2 How will this development disturb or enhance	There will be no loss of ecosystems or biological diversity
ecosystems and/or result in the loss or protection of	as the project involves the remining of an already
biological diversity? What measures were explored to	existing mine. The remining of mine residue may have a
firstly avoid these negative impacts, and where these	final positive impact on the area if these areas can then
negative impacts could not be avoided altogether, what	be completely removed and rehabilitated.
measures were explored to minimise and remedy	
(including offsetting) the impacts? What measures were	
explored to enhance positive impacts?	
1.3 How will this development pollute and/or degrade the	The remining of mine residue may lead to pollution of
biophysical environment? What measures were	nearby areas if management measures are not put into
explored to firstly avoid these impacts, and where	place. The impacts and management on the biophysical
impacts could not be avoided altogether, what measures	environment are found in Section A(v) of this EMP.
were explored to minimise and remedy (including	
offsetting) the impacts? What measures were explored	
to enhance positive impacts?	
1.4 What waste will be generated by this development?	No additional non-mining waste than that already
What measures were explored to firstly avoid waste, and	generated by the mine. The mine has a waste procedure
where waste could not be avoided altogether, what	in place for non-mining waste.
measures were explored to minimise, reuse and/or	



Guideline requirement	Comments on requirement
recycle the waste? What measures have been explored	
to safely treat and/or dispose of unavoidable waste?	
1.5 How will this development disturb or enhance	All proposed activities are on the already existing mining
landscapes and/or sites that constitute the nation's	area. It is not envisaged that any cultural heritage
cultural heritage? What measures were explored to firstly	resources will be disturbed.
avoid these impacts, and where impacts could not be	
avoided altogether, what measures were explored to	
minimise and remedy (including offsetting) the impacts?	
What measures were explored to enhance positive	
impacts?	
1.6 How will this development use and/or impact on non-	Resources include diesel for vehicles to transport the
renewable natural resources? What measures were	mine residue to the plant. All resources used in the plant
explored to ensure responsible and equitable use of the	to add the reworking of the mine residue to the current
resources? How have the consequences of the depletion	operation has been included in the MWP.
of the non-renewable natural resources been	
considered? What measures were explored to firstly	
avoid these impacts, and where impacts could not be	
avoided altogether, what measures were explored to	
minimise and remedy (including offsetting) the impacts?	
What measures were explored to enhance positive	
impacts?	
1.7 How will this development use and/or impact on	
renewable natural resources and the ecosystem of which	
they are part? Will the use of the resources and/or impact	
on the ecosystem jeopardise the integrity of the resource	
and/or system taking into account carrying capacity	
restrictions, limits of acceptable change, and thresholds?	
What measures were explored to firstly avoid the use of	
resources, or if avoidance is not possible, to minimise the	
use of resources? What measures were taken to ensure	
responsible and equitable use of the resources? What	
measures were explored to enhance positive impacts?	
1.7.1 Does the proposed development exacerbate the	The mine aim to reduce this resource consumption as
increased dependency on increased use of resources to	part of the reduction in operational costs.
maintain economic growth or does it reduce resource	
dependency (i.e. de-materialised growth)? (note:	
sustainability requires that settlements reduce their	
ecological footprint by using less material and energy	



Guideline requirement	Comments on requirement
demands and reduce the amount of waste they	
generate, without compromising their quest to improve	
their quality of life)	
1.7.2 Does the proposed use of natural resources	The remining of mine waste will aid in rehabilitation and
constitute the best use thereof? Is the use justifiable	prevent the impacts associated with progressive
when considering intra- and intergenerational equity, and	development of a new pit or the impact of prospecting.
are there more important priorities for which the	
resources should be used (i.e. what are the opportunity	
costs of using these resources this the proposed	
development alternative?)	
1.7.3 Do the proposed location, type and scale of	Yes. The location is an already existing mine and will not
development promote a reduced dependency on	significantly increase dependency on the resource
resources?	
1.8 How were a risk-averse and cautious approach	The impact assessment is based on previous studies
applied in terms of ecological impacts?	done in the area.
1.8.1 What are the limits of current knowledge (note: the	No specialist studies are included in this assessment.
gaps, uncertainties and assumptions must be clearly	
stated)?	
1.8.2 What is the level of risk associated with the limits	All risks, significance thereof as well as management are
of current knowledge?	based on the EAP's knowledge and not on specialist
	recommendations.
1.8.3 Based on the limits of knowledge and the level of	The impact assessment is based on previous studies
risk, how and to what extent was a risk-averse and	done in the area.
cautious approach applied to the development?	
1.9 How will the ecological impacts resulting from this	Refer to impact assessment for an in-depth description
development impact on people's environmental right in	of each environmental component and the associated
terms following	impact of the project.
1.9.1 Negative impacts: e.g. access to resources,	
opportunity costs, loss of amenity (e.g. open space), air	
and water quality impacts, nuisance (noise, odour, etc.),	
health impacts, visual impacts, etc. What measures were	
taken to firstly avoid negative impacts, but if avoidance	
is not possible, to minimise, manage and remedy	
negative impacts?	
1.9.2 Positive impacts: e.g. improved access to	
resources, improved amenity, improved air or water	
quality, etc. What measures were taken to enhance	
positive impacts?	



Guideline requirement	Comments on requirement
1.10 Describe the linkages and dependencies between	
human wellbeing, livelihoods and ecosystem services	
applicable to the area in question and how the	
development's ecological impacts will result in socio-	
economic impacts (e.g. on livelihoods, loss of heritage	
site, opportunity costs, etc.)?	
1.11 Based on all of the above, how will this development	
positively or negatively impact on ecological integrity	
objectives/targets/considerations of the area?	
1.12 Considering the need to secure ecological integrity	There is no alternative to this project. The reclamation of
and a healthy biophysical environment, describe how the	mine residue will have a nett positive impact on the area
alternatives identified (in terms of all the different	and therefore no alternative is assessed.
elements of the development and all the different	
impacts being proposed), resulted in the selection of the	
"best practicable environmental option" in terms of	
ecological considerations?	
1.13 Describe the positive and negative cumulative	Refer to the cumulative impact assessment.
ecological/biophysical impacts bearing in mind the size,	
scale, scope and nature of the project in relation to its	
location and existing and other planned developments in	
the area?	
2.1 What is the socio-economic context of the area,	Part A(g)(iv)(15). The impact of the project does not
based on, amongst other considerations, the following	affect spatial patterns.
considerations?	
2.1.1 The IDP (and its sector plans' vision, objectives,	
strategies, indicators and targets) and any other strategic	
plans, frameworks of policies applicable to the area,	
2.1.2 Spatial priorities and desired spatial patterns (e.g.	
need for integrated of segregated communities, need to	
upgrade informal settlements, need for densification,	
etc.),	
2.1.3 Spatial characteristics (e.g. existing land uses,	
planned land uses, cultural landscapes, etc.), and	
2.1.4 Municipal Economic Development Strategy ("LED	
Strategy").	
2.2 Considering the socio-economic context, what will	Refer to impact assessment. Employment to be
the socio-economic impacts be of the development (and	discussed between mine management and community.



Guideline requirement	Comments on requirement
its separate elements/aspects), and specifically also on	
the socio-economic objectives of the area?	
2.2.1 Will the development complement the local socio-	The project ensures that those who are already
economic initiatives (such as local economic	employed remain employed which reduces
development (LED) initiatives), or skills development	unemployment in the area and transfers skills to
programs?	employees.
2.3 How will this development address the specific	The project ensures the community is consulted and
physical, psychological, developmental, cultural and	their needs are addressed through meetings.
social needs and interests of the relevant communities?	
2.4 Will the development result in equitable (intra- and	The impacts associated with the project will remain the
inter-generational) impact distribution, in the short- and	same as the mine is already existing.
long-term? Will the impact be socially and economically	
sustainable in the short- and long-term?	
2.5 (Not applicable)	
2.6 How were a risk-averse and cautious approach	See above.
applied in terms of socio-economic impacts?	
2.6.1 What are the limits of current knowledge (note: the	
gaps, uncertainties and assumptions must be clearly	
stated)?	
2.6.2 What is the level of risk (note: related to inequality,	
social fabric, livelihoods, vulnerable communities, critical	
resources, economic vulnerability and sustainability)	
associated with the limits of current knowledge?	
2.6.3 Based on the limits of knowledge and the level of	
risk, how and to what extent was a risk-averse and	
cautious approach applied to the development?	
2.7 How will the socio-economic impacts resulting from the	is development impact on people's environmental right in
terms following:	
2.7.1 Negative impacts: e.g. health (e.g. HIV-Aids),	Refer to impact assessment. The project will not impact
safety, social ills, etc. What measures were taken to	the socio-economic component negatively.
firstly avoid negative impacts, but if avoidance is not	
possible, to minimise, manage and remedy negative	
impacts?	
2.7.2 Positive impacts. What measures were taken to	Consultation with I&APs ensured the mine considers the
enhance positive impacts?	needs of the socio-economic component.
2.8 Considering the linkages and dependencies between	Refer to impact assessment. There is no alternative to
human wellbeing, livelihoods and ecosystem services,	this project.
describe the linkages and dependencies applicable to	



the area in question and how the development's socioeconomic impacts will result in ecological impacts (e.g. over utilisation of natural resources, etc.)?  2.9 What measures were taken to pursue the selection of the "best practicable environmental option" in terms of socio-economic considerations?  2.10 What measures were taken to pursue environmental justice so that adverse environmental elimpacts shall not be distributed in such a manner as to unfairly discriminate against any person, particularly vulnerable and disadvantaged persons (who are the beneficiaries and is the development located appropriately)? Considering the need for social equity and justice, do the alternatives identified, allow the "best practicable environmental option" to be selected, or is there a need for other alternatives to be considered?  2.11 What measures were taken to pursue equitable access to environmental resources, benefits and services to meet basic human needs and ensure human wellbeing, and what special measures were taken to ensure access thereto by categories of persons disadvantaged by unfair discrimination?  2.12 What measures were taken to ensure that the responsibility for the environmental health and safety consequences of the development has been addressed throughout the development is file cycle?  2.13 What measures were taken to:  2.13.1 ensure the participation of all interested and affected parties,  2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for archieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and experience and other appropriate means	Guideline requirement	Comments on requirement
(e.g. over utilisation of natural resources, etc.)?  2.9 What measures were taken to pursue the selection of the "best practicable environmental option" in terms of socio-economic considerations?  2.10 What measures were taken to pursue environmental justice so that adverse environmental impacts shall not be distributed in such a manner as to unfairly discriminate against any person, particularly vulnerable and disadvantaged persons (who are the beneficiaries and is the development located appropriately)? Considering the need for social equity and justice, do the alternatives to be selected, or is there a need for other alternatives to be considered?  2.11 What measures were taken to pursue equitable access to environmental resources, benefits and services to meet basic human needs and ensure human wellbeing, and what special measures were taken to ensure that the responsibility for the environmental health and safety consequences of the development has been addressed throughout the development slife cycle?  2.13 What measures were taken to:  2.13.1 ensure the participation of all interested and affected parties,  2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  1.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	the area in question and how the development's	
2.9 What measures were taken to pursue the selection of the "best practicable environmental option" in terms of socio-economic considerations?  2.10 What measures were taken to pursue environmental justice so that adverse environmental environmental justice so that adverse environmental impacts shall not be distributed in such a manner as to unfairly discriminate against any person, particularly vulnerable and disadvantaged persons (who are the beneficiaries and is the development located appropriately)? Considering the need for social equity and justice, do the alternatives identified, allow the "best practicable environmental option" to be selected, or is there a need for other alternatives to be considered?  2.11 What measures were taken to pursue equitable access to environmental resources, benefits and services to meet basic human needs and ensure human wellbeing, and what special measures were taken to ensure access thereto by categories of persons disadvantaged by unfair discrimination?  2.12 What measures were taken to ensure that the responsibility for the environmental health and safety consequences of the development has been addressed throughout the development has been addressed throughout the development has been addressed throughout the development is life cycle?  2.13 What measures were taken to:  2.13.1 ensure the participation of all interested and affected parties.  2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons.  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	socioeconomic impacts will result in ecological impacts	
of the "best practicable environmental option" in terms of socio-economic considerations?  2.10 What measures were taken to pursue environmental justice so that adverse environmental impacts shall not be distributed in such a manner as to unfairly discriminate against any person, particularly vulnerable and disadvantaged persons (who are the beneficiaries and is the development located appropriately)? Considering the need for social equity and justice, do the alternatives identified, allow the "best practicable environmental option" to be selected, or is there a need for other alternatives to be considered?  2.11 What measures were taken to pursue equitable access to environmental resources, benefits and services to meet basic human needs and ensure human wellbeing, and what special measures were taken to ensure access thereto by categories of persons disadvantaged by unfair discrimination?  2.12 What measures were taken to ensure that the responsibility for the environmental health and safety consequences of the development has been addressed throughout the developments life cycle?  2.13 What measures were taken to:  2.13.1 ensure the participation of all interested and affected persons were consulted during the PPP.  All affected persons were consulted during the person before a the impacts associated with the project.  All affected persons were consulted on the impacts associated with the project.  All affected persons were consulted on the impacts associated with the project.  All affected persons were consulted on the impacts associated with the project.  All affected persons were consulted	(e.g. over utilisation of natural resources, etc.)?	
socio-economic considerations?  2.10 What measures were taken to pursue environmental justice so that adverse environmental impacts shall not be distributed in such a manner as to unfairly discriminate against any person, particularly vulnerable and disadvantaged persons (who are the beneficiaries and is the development located appropriately)? Considering the need for social equity and justice, do the alternatives identified, allow the "best practicable environmental option" to be selected, or is there a need for other alternatives to be considered?  2.11 What measures were taken to pursue equitable access to environmental resources, benefits and services to meet basic human needs and ensure human wellbeing, and what special measures were taken to ensure access thereto by categories of persons disadvantaged by unfair discrimination?  2.12 What measures were taken to ensure that the responsibility for the environmental health and safety consequences of the development has been addressed throughout the development's life cycle?  2.13 What measures were taken to:  2.13.1 ensure the participation of all interested and affected parties,  2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	2.9 What measures were taken to pursue the selection	The reclamation of mine residue will aid in rehabilitation
2.10 What measures were taken to pursue environmental justice so that adverse environmental impacts shall not be distributed in such a manner as to unfairly discriminate against any person, particularly vulnerable and disadvantaged persons (who are the beneficiaries and is the development located appropriately)? Considering the need for social equity and justice, do the alternatives identified, allow the "best practicable environmental option" to be selected, or is there a need for other alternatives to be considered?  2.11 What measures were taken to pursue equitable access to environmental resources, benefits and services to meet basic human needs and ensure human wellbeing, and what special measures were taken to ensure access thereto by categories of persons disadvantaged by unfair discrimination?  2.12 What measures were taken to ensure that the responsibility for the environmental health and safety consequences of the development has been addressed throughout the development being and effective participation of all interested and affected parties,  2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	of the "best practicable environmental option" in terms of	which is ultimately the best practicable environmental
environmental justice so that adverse environmental impacts shall not be distributed in such a manner as to unfairly discriminate against any person, particularly vulnerable and disadvantaged persons (who are the beneficiaries and is the development located appropriately)? Considering the need for social equity and justice, do the alternatives identified, allow the "best practicable environmental option" to be selected, or is there a need for other alternatives to be considered?  2.11 What measures were taken to pursue equitable access to environmental resources, benefits and services to meet basic human needs and ensure human wellbeing, and what special measures were taken to ensure access thereto by categories of persons disadvantaged by unfair discrimination?  2.12 What measures were taken to ensure that the responsibility for the environmental health and safety consequences of the development has been addressed throughout the development life cycle?  2.13 What measures were taken to:  2.13.1 ensure the participation of all interested and affected parties,  2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	socio-economic considerations?	option.
impacts shall not be distributed in such a manner as to unfairly discriminate against any person, particularly vulnerable and disadvantaged persons (who are the beneficiaries and is the development located appropriately)? Considering the need for social equity and justice, do the alternatives identified, allow the "best practicable environmental option" to be selected, or is there a need for other alternatives to be considered?  2.11 What measures were taken to pursue equitable access to environmental resources, benefits and services to meet basic human needs and ensure human wellbeing, and what special measures were taken to ensure access thereto by categories of persons disadvantaged by unfair discrimination?  2.12 What measures were taken to ensure that the responsibility for the environmental health and safety consequences of the development has been addressed throughout the development has been addressed throughout the development's life cycle?  2.13 What measures were taken to:  2.13.1 ensure the participation of all interested and affected parties,  2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	2.10 What measures were taken to pursue	All affected persons were consulted during the PPP.
unfairly discriminate against any person, particularly vulnerable and disadvantaged persons (who are the beneficiaries and is the development located appropriately)? Considering the need for social equity and justice, do the alternatives identified, allow the "best practicable environmental option" to be selected, or is there a need for other alternatives to be considered?  2.11 What measures were taken to pursue equitable access to environmental resources, benefits and services to meet basic human needs and ensure human wellbeing, and what special measures were taken to ensure access thereto by categories of persons disadvantaged by unfair discrimination?  2.12 What measures were taken to ensure that the responsibility for the environmental health and safety consequences of the development has been addressed throughout the development's life cycle?  2.13 What measures were taken to:  2.13.1 ensure the participation of all interested and affected parties,  2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	environmental justice so that adverse environmental	They have adequate time to comment if needed on the
vulnerable and disadvantaged persons (who are the beneficiaries and is the development located appropriately)? Considering the need for social equity and justice, do the alternatives identified, allow the "best practicable environmental option" to be selected, or is there a need for other alternatives to be considered?  2.11 What measures were taken to pursue equitable access to environmental resources, benefits and services to meet basic human needs and ensure human wellbeing, and what special measures were taken to ensure access thereto by categories of persons disadvantaged by unfair discrimination?  2.12 What measures were taken to ensure that the responsibility for the environmental health and safety consequences of the development has been addressed throughout the development's life cycle?  2.13.1 what measures were taken to:  2.13.1 ensure the participation of all interested and affected parties,  2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	impacts shall not be distributed in such a manner as to	impacts associated with the project.
beneficiaries and is the development located appropriately)? Considering the need for social equity and justice, do the alternatives identified, allow the "best practicable environmental option" to be selected, or is there a need for other alternatives to be considered?  2.11 What measures were taken to pursue equitable access to environmental resources, benefits and services to meet basic human needs and ensure human wellbeing, and what special measures were taken to ensure access thereto by categories of persons disadvantaged by unfair discrimination?  2.12 What measures were taken to ensure that the responsibility for the environmental health and safety consequences of the development has been addressed throughout the development's life cycle?  2.13 What measures were taken to:  2.13.1 ensure the participation of all interested and affected parties,  2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	unfairly discriminate against any person, particularly	
appropriately)? Considering the need for social equity and justice, do the alternatives identified, allow the "best practicable environmental option" to be selected, or is there a need for other alternatives to be considered?  2.11 What measures were taken to pursue equitable access to environmental resources, benefits and services to meet basic human needs and ensure human wellbeing, and what special measures were taken to ensure access thereto by categories of persons disadvantaged by unfair discrimination?  2.12 What measures were taken to ensure that the responsibility for the environmental health and safety consequences of the development has been addressed throughout the development's life cycle?  2.13 What measures were taken to:  2.13.1 ensure the participation of all interested and affected parties,  2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	vulnerable and disadvantaged persons (who are the	
and justice, do the alternatives identified, allow the "best practicable environmental option" to be selected, or is there a need for other alternatives to be considered?  2.11 What measures were taken to pursue equitable access to environmental resources, benefits and services to meet basic human needs and ensure human wellbeing, and what special measures were taken to ensure access thereto by categories of persons disadvantaged by unfair discrimination?  2.12 What measures were taken to ensure that the responsibility for the environmental health and safety consequences of the development has been addressed throughout the development's life cycle?  2.13 What measures were taken to:  2.13.1 ensure the participation of all interested and affected parties,  2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	beneficiaries and is the development located	
practicable environmental option" to be selected, or is there a need for other alternatives to be considered?  2.11 What measures were taken to pursue equitable access to environmental resources, benefits and services to meet basic human needs and ensure human wellbeing, and what special measures were taken to ensure access thereto by categories of persons disadvantaged by unfair discrimination?  2.12 What measures were taken to ensure that the responsibility for the environmental health and safety consequences of the development has been addressed throughout the development's life cycle?  2.13 What measures were taken to:  2.13.1 ensure the participation of all interested and affected parties,  2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	appropriately)? Considering the need for social equity	
there a need for other alternatives to be considered?  2.11 What measures were taken to pursue equitable access to environmental resources, benefits and services to meet basic human needs and ensure human wellbeing, and what special measures were taken to ensure access thereto by categories of persons disadvantaged by unfair discrimination?  2.12 What measures were taken to ensure that the responsibility for the environmental health and safety consequences of the development has been addressed throughout the development's life cycle?  2.13 What measures were taken to:  2.13.1 ensure the participation of all interested and affected parties,  2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	and justice, do the alternatives identified, allow the "best	
2.11 What measures were taken to pursue equitable access to environmental resources, benefits and services to meet basic human needs and ensure human wellbeing, and what special measures were taken to ensure access thereto by categories of persons disadvantaged by unfair discrimination?  2.12 What measures were taken to ensure that the responsibility for the environmental health and safety consequences of the development has been addressed throughout the development's life cycle?  2.13 What measures were taken to:  2.13.1 ensure the participation of all interested and affected parties,  2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	practicable environmental option" to be selected, or is	
access to environmental resources, benefits and services to meet basic human needs and ensure human wellbeing, and what special measures were taken to ensure access thereto by categories of persons disadvantaged by unfair discrimination?  2.12 What measures were taken to ensure that the responsibility for the environmental health and safety consequences of the development has been addressed throughout the development's life cycle?  2.13 What measures were taken to:  2.13.1 ensure the participation of all interested and affected parties,  2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	there a need for other alternatives to be considered?	
services to meet basic human needs and ensure human wellbeing, and what special measures were taken to ensure access thereto by categories of persons disadvantaged by unfair discrimination?  2.12 What measures were taken to ensure that the responsibility for the environmental health and safety consequences of the development has been addressed throughout the development's life cycle?  2.13 What measures were taken to:  2.13.1 ensure the participation of all interested and affected parties,  2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	2.11 What measures were taken to pursue equitable	
wellbeing, and what special measures were taken to ensure access thereto by categories of persons disadvantaged by unfair discrimination?  2.12 What measures were taken to ensure that the responsibility for the environmental health and safety consequences of the development has been addressed throughout the development's life cycle?  2.13 What measures were taken to:  2.13.1 ensure the participation of all interested and affected parties,  2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	access to environmental resources, benefits and	
ensure access thereto by categories of persons disadvantaged by unfair discrimination?  2.12 What measures were taken to ensure that the responsibility for the environmental health and safety consequences of the development has been addressed throughout the development's life cycle?  2.13 What measures were taken to:  2.13.1 ensure the participation of all interested and affected parties,  2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	services to meet basic human needs and ensure human	
disadvantaged by unfair discrimination?  2.12 What measures were taken to ensure that the responsibility for the environmental health and safety consequences of the development has been addressed throughout the development's life cycle?  2.13 What measures were taken to:  2.13.1 ensure the participation of all interested and affected parties,  2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	wellbeing, and what special measures were taken to	
2.12 What measures were taken to ensure that the responsibility for the environmental health and safety consequences of the development has been addressed throughout the development's life cycle?  2.13 What measures were taken to:  2.13.1 ensure the participation of all interested and affected parties,  2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	ensure access thereto by categories of persons	
responsibility for the environmental health and safety consequences of the development has been addressed throughout the development's life cycle?  2.13 What measures were taken to:  2.13.1 ensure the participation of all interested and affected parties,  2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	disadvantaged by unfair discrimination?	
consequences of the development has been addressed throughout the development's life cycle?  2.13 What measures were taken to:  2.13.1 ensure the participation of all interested and affected parties,  2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	2.12 What measures were taken to ensure that the	The mine has a health and safety system in place which
throughout the development's life cycle?  2.13 What measures were taken to:  2.13.1 ensure the participation of all interested and affected parties,  2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	responsibility for the environmental health and safety	will also be implemented for this project.
2.13 What measures were taken to:  2.13.1 ensure the participation of all interested and affected parties,  2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	consequences of the development has been addressed	
2.13.1 ensure the participation of all interested and affected parties,  2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	throughout the development's life cycle?	
affected parties,  2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	2.13 What measures were taken to:	Refer to Part A(g)(iii) for public participation
2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	2.13.1 ensure the participation of all interested and	
the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for achieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	affected parties,	
achieving equitable and effective participation,  2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	2.13.2 provide all people with an opportunity to develop	
2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	the understanding, skills and capacity necessary for	
disadvantaged persons  2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	achieving equitable and effective participation,	
2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	2.13.3 ensure participation by vulnerable and	
through environmental education, the raising of environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	disadvantaged persons	
environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	2.13.4 promote community wellbeing and empowerment	
	through environmental education, the raising of	
experience and other appropriate means	environmental awareness, the sharing of knowledge and	
	experience and other appropriate means	



Guideline requirement	Comments on requirement
2.13.5 ensure openness and transparency, and access	
to information in terms of the process	
2.13.6 ensure that the interests, needs and values of all	
interested and affected parties were taken into account,	
and that adequate recognition were given to all forms of	
knowledge, including traditional and ordinary knowledge,	
and	
2.13.7 ensure that the vital role of women and youth in	
environmental management and development were	
recognised and their full participation therein were being	
promoted	
2.14 Considering the interests, needs and values of all	
the interested and affected parties, describe how the	
development will allow for opportunities for all the	
segments of the community (e.g. a mixture of low-,	
middle-, and high-income housing opportunities) that is	
consistent with the priority needs of the local area (or that	
is proportional to the needs of an area)?	
2.15 What measures have been taken to ensure that	All contractors, sub-contractors and workers will
current and/or future workers will be informed of work	continue to attend compulsory environmental awareness
that potentially might be harmful to human health or the	training and inductions. This training will highlight the
environment or of dangers associated with the work, and	dangers associated with the workplace. Procedures
what measures have been taken to ensure that the right	relating to environmental risks will also be put in place
of workers to refuse such work will be respected and	and will be regularly updated.
protected?	
2.16 Describe how the development will impact on job	Employment to be discussed between mine
creation in terms of, amongst other aspects:	management and community. The mine ensure
2.16.1 the number of temporary versus permanent jobs	employment is endured by using the workers already at
that will be created,	the mine.
2.16.2 whether the labour available in the area will be	
able to take up the job opportunities (i.e. do the required	
skills match the skills available in the area),	
2.16.3 the distance from where labourers will have to	
travel,	
2.16.4 the location of jobs opportunities versus the	
location of impacts (i.e. equitable distribution of costs	
and benefits), and	



Guideline requirement	Comments on requirement
2.16.5 the opportunity costs in terms of job creation (e.g.	
a mine might create 100 jobs, but impact on 1000	
agricultural jobs, etc.).	
2.17 What measures were taken to ensure:	Refer to Part A(g)(iii). I&APs are consulted to ensure
2.17.1 that there were intergovernmental coordination	their input is included for the project development.
and harmonisation of policies, legislation and actions	
relating to the environment, and	
2.17.2 that actual or potential conflicts of interest	
between organs of state were resolved through conflict	
resolution procedures?	
2.18 What measures were taken to ensure that the	
environment will be held in public trust for the people,	
that the beneficial use of environmental resources will	
serve the public interest, and that the environment will be	
protected as the people's common heritage?	
2.19 Are the mitigation measures proposed realistic and	Refer to impact assessment. The management
what long-term environmental legacy and managed	measures are realistic.
burden will be left?	
2.20 What measures were taken to ensure that the costs	The mine has an updated financial provision which
of remedying pollution, environmental degradation and	includes rehabilitation costs.
consequent adverse health effects and of preventing,	
controlling or minimising further pollution, environmental	
damage or adverse health effects will be paid for by	
those responsible for harming the environment?	
2.21 Considering the need to secure ecological integrity	There is no alternative to this project.
and a healthy bio-physical environment, describe how	
the alternatives identified (in terms of all the different	
elements of the development and all the different	
impacts being proposed), resulted in the selection of the	
best practicable environmental option in terms of socio-	
economic considerations?	
2.22 Describe the positive and negative cumulative	Refer to the cumulative impact assessment.
socio-economic impacts bearing in mind the size, scale,	
scope and nature of the project in relation to its location	
and other planned developments in the area?	



## Motivation for the preferred development footprint within the approved site g) including a full description of the process followed to reach the proposed development footprint within the approved site

There were no specialist studies conducted for the development as the mine is an already existing mine and the same environmental context applies. The only activity to be considered for this application is the remining of already existing mine residue. No new areas will be disturbed.



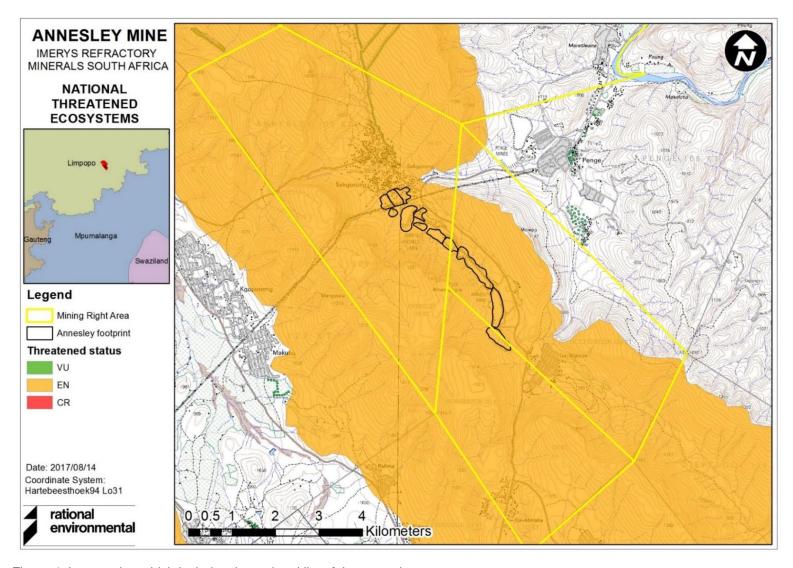


Figure 4: Layout plan which includes the national list of threatened ecosystems



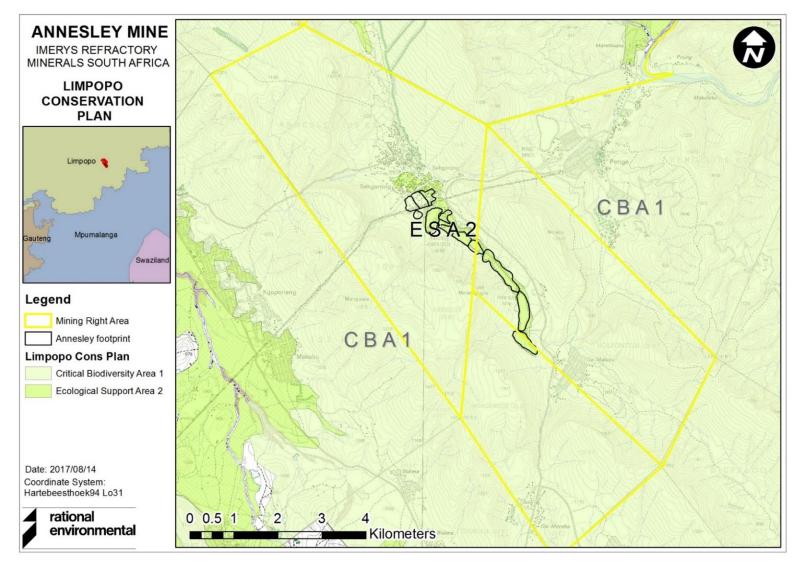


Figure 5: Layout plan indicating the Limpopo Critical Biodiversity Areas



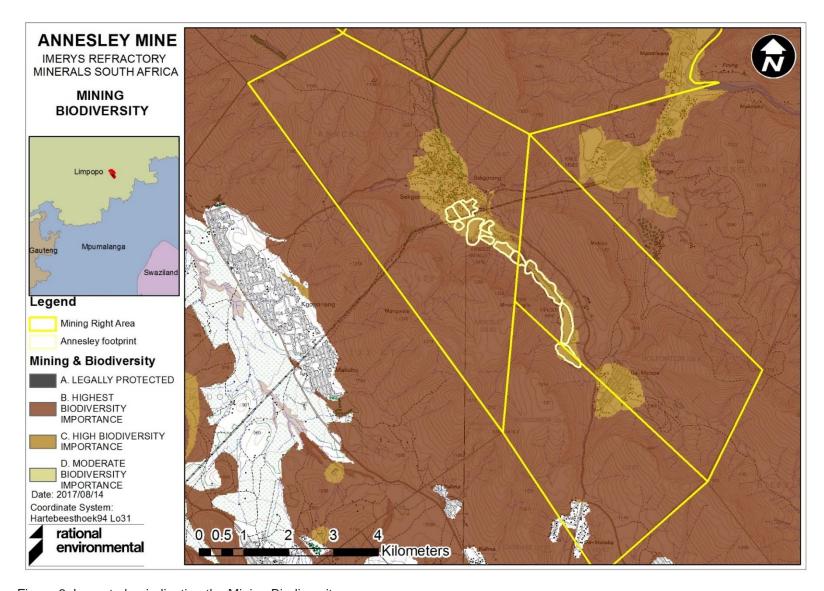


Figure 6: Layout plan indicating the Mining Biodiversity area



## h) Description of the process followed to reach the proposed preferred site

The only activity to be considered for this application is the remining of already existing mine residue. No new areas will be disturbed.

## i) Details of the development footprint alternatives considered

The following definition of "alternatives" is given in the EIA Regulations: "alternatives", in relation to a proposed activity, means different means of meeting the general purpose and requirements of the activity, which may include alternatives to the -

- (a) property on which or location where the activity is proposed to be undertaken;
- (b) type of activity to be undertaken;
- (c) design or layout of the activity;

Management Programme

- (d) technology to be used in the activity; or
- (e) operational aspects of the activity; and
- (f) includes the option of not implementing the activity;"

Please note the term preferred alternative is the preferred activity whereby the second alternative is the alternative to the preferred alternative.

## (a) The property on which or location where it is proposed to undertake the activity

As above, no alternatives are applied for.

## (b) The type of activity to be undertaken

As above, no alternatives are applied for.

### (c) The design or layout of the activity

As above, no alternatives are applied for.

## (d) The technology to be used in the activity

As above, no alternatives are applied for.

## (e) The operational aspects of the activity

As above, no alternatives are applied for.

### (f) The option of not implementing the activity

In the case of the no go option being implemented, the mine residue area cannot be rehabilitated to an adequate final land use.



## ii) Details of the public participation process followed

According to the Publication of Participation Guideline (NEMA), and I&AP is:

"(a) any person, group or persons or organisations interested in or affected by an activity, and (b) any organ of state that may have jurisdiction over any aspect of the activity".

This definition is more detailed in the Guideline for consultation with communities and I&APs (MPRDA): "Interested and affected' parties include, but are not limited to; (i) Host Communities, (ii) Landowners (Traditional and Title Deed owners), (iii) Traditional Authority, (iv) Land Claimants, (v) Lawful land occupier, (vi) The Department of Land Affairs, (vii) Any other person (including on adjacent and non-adjacent properties) whose socio-economic conditions may be directly affected by the proposed prospecting or mining operation (viii) The Local Municipality, (ix) The relevant Government Departments, agencies and institutions responsible for the various aspects of the environment and for infrastructure which may be affected by the proposed project."

The process followed adheres to the National Environmental Management Act 107-1998 - National guideline on minimum information (20180209-GGN-41432-00086) and the 2012, IEM Guideline Series 7, Public participation, GN 807.

## (a) Identification of interested and affected parties

No comments were received on the ESR. Refer to Table 6 below for all I&APs and stakeholders identified. All of these I&APs and stakeholders were in fact consulted. Refer to Section 2(h)(iii)(2) below for process that was followed. This will be added when comments are received.

Table 6: I&APs and stakeholders identified

Interested and Affected Parties	Date comments received	Issues raised	EAPs response to issues as mandated by the applicant	Section reference in this ESR where issues and or response were incorporated
Affected parties				
Landowner/s				
According to the title deeds, the	None	None	N/A	N/A
National Government of South				
Africa is the landowner,				
however, Roka Malepe				
Traditional Council is the				
traditional landowner of the farm				



Interested and Affected	Date comments	Issues raised	EAPs response	Section reference
Parties	received		to issues as	in this ESR where
			mandated by	issues and or
			the applicant	response were
				incorporated
Annesley and Babina Tlou is the				
Traditional Council is the				
traditional landowner of the farm				
Havercroft.				
Lawful occupier/s of the land				
The land is currently occupied	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
by the mine.				
Landowners or lawful occupier	s on adjacent prop	erties		
Roka Malepe Traditional	29/10/2018	Mr Malepe	Mr Hendrik	Addendum 4G
Council		stated that the	Jones is in direct	
		mine has	contact	
		disturbed the	with the families	
		area, chased	that have graves	
		and	on	
		moved around	the mine. These	
		the people a	graves are	
		lot. He	managed	
		says nothing	by Mr Hendrik	
		has happened	Jones, Xolisa	
		since	Mvinjelwa and	
		they exhumed	the community	
		the graves	Liaison	
		and stated	Officer (CLO),	
		that he has	Mathebo.	
		various health		
		issues due		
		to the mine.		
		In 2015 a	The death of any	Addendum 4G
		meeting was	miners will be	
		held regarding	further	
		concerns. In	investigated to	
		this meeting	see if	
		compensation	compensation	
		was agreed		
		was agreed		



Interested and Affected	Date comments	Issues raised	EAPs response	Section reference
Parties	received		to issues as	in this ESR where
			mandated by	issues and or
			the applicant	response were
				incorporated
		for someone	has indeed been	
		who died at	provided.	
		the mine. The		
		process of		
		remining is not		
		rejected		
		nonetheless		
Babina Tlou Traditional Council	14/01/2019	Modubeng	A plan of activity	Addendum 4I
		Development	will be compiled	
		Committee	to ensure that	
		(MDC):	the correct	
		The waste	community is	
		rock dump	involved in the	
		and slimes	employment.	
		dam of		
		Havercroft is		
		combined with		
		quarry 1 of		
		Annesley.		
		How will the		
		employment		
		work as two		
		different		
		communities		
		are involved?		
Babina Tlou Traditional Council	14/01/2019	There is a	The SLP will be	Addendum 4I
		general	discussed	
		concern	between Imerys	
		regarding	and the	
		the issue of	Community and	
		the Social and	notes will be	
		Labour	taken to finalise	
		Plan (SLP)	the SLP as	
			necessary.	



Interested and Affected	Date comments	Issues raised	EAPs response	Section reference
Parties	received		to issues as	in this ESR where
			mandated by	issues and or
			the applicant	response were
				incorporated
Babina Tlou Traditional Council	14/01/2019	MDC:	The local	Addendum 4I
		A request was	community will	
		made	be involved as	
		regarding the	much as	
		trucking/piping	possible.	
		for the	Once the	
		transportation	authorisation is	
		of product to	obtained the	
		employ a	local community	
		company from	will be	
		Havercroft to	communicated	
		take the	with.	
		product from		
		Havercroft to		
		Annesley.		
Babina Tlou Traditional Council	14/01/2019	The issue of	BECS Services	Addendum 4I
		graves on the	is aware that this	
		mining	is a sensitive	
		site was taken	issue. The	
		to the DMR.	mining method	
		The DMR	will be done	
		had stated	correctly and will	
		that no mining	ensure that the	
		should take	graves are dealt	
		place in the	with correctly.	
		vicinity of the		
		graves.		
		How will the	the quarries will	Addendum 4I
		quarries be	be sloped so the	
		filled if the	cattle do not fall	
		material is	in.	
		removed from		



Parties received by the applicant of the applicant of response were incorporated.    Havercroft Operation to Annesley?   How long will the process of consultation the process of communicate with BECS services and notify them of the commences?   Progress.   Addendum 41	Interested and Affected	Date comments	Issues raised	EAPs response	Section reference
Havercroft Operation to Annesley?  Babina Tiou Traditional Council  I 4/01/2019  I 4/01/2019  Clarity was requested on the impact of animal and vegetation life.  Will remain the vegetation life.  Will remain the vegetation life.  Will remain the will remain the remaining will not disturb any new areas  Babina Tiou Traditional Council  I 4/01/2019  MDC: We will communicate the events of the meeting with the rest of The community.  MID ECS Services Addendum 4I  Will finalise the remaining will not disturb any new areas  Babina Tiou Traditional Council  I 4/01/2019  MDC: We will the meeting will not disturb any new areas  Babina Tiou Traditional Council  I 4/01/2019  MDC: We will the intention of the meeting with the rest of The community.  Multicipal councillor – ward 9 and 16  Cilir. OA Malakane (ward 9)  None	Parties	received		to issues as	in this ESR where
Havercroft Operation to Annesley?   How long will the process of communicate with BECS take before remining commences? Progress.   Havercroft the process of communicate with BECS and notify them of the commences? Progress.   The impact of and animal life animal and vegetation life.   Same as the remining will not disturb any new areas   Addendum 41				mandated by	issues and or
Babina Tlou Traditional Council 14/01/2019 How long will the process of consultation at take before remining commences? Progress.  Babina Tlou Traditional Council 14/01/2019 Clarity was requested on the impact of animal and vegetation life. Will remain the same as the remining will not disturb any new areas  Babina Tlou Traditional Council 14/01/2019 MDC: We will same as the remining will not disturb any new areas will finalise the EMP and hand it in to DMR.  Municipal councillor – ward 9 and 16  Clir. OA Malakane (ward 9) None None N/A N/A  Clir. R Khoza (ward 16) None None N/A N/A  Mranuncipal manager  Wir. Septor Masemola None None N/A N/A  Mr Philemon Mphahlele N/A N/A  Mr Philemon Mphahlele N/A N/A  Mr Philemon Mphahlele N/A N/A  Mranuncipal councillor to the progress of communicate the remining will not disturb any new areas  None None N/A N/A  Mranuncipal Mranuncipal manager  Mr. Septor Masemola None None N/A N/A  Mranuncipal manager  Mr. Septor Masemola None None N/A N/A  Mranuncipal manager  Mr. Septor Masemola None None N/A N/A  Mranuncipal manager  Mr. Septor Masemola None None N/A N/A  Mranuncipal manager  Mr. Septor Masemola None None N/A N/A  Mranuncipal manager  Mr. Septor Masemola None None N/A N/A  Mranuncipal manager  Mr. Septor Masemola None None N/A N/A  Mranuncipal manager  Mr. Septor Masemola None None N/A N/A  Mranuncipal manager  Mranuncipal manager				the applicant	response were
Babina Tiou Traditional Council 14/01/2019 How long will the process of consultation take before consultation and notify them of the progress.  Babina Tiou Traditional Council 14/01/2019 Clarity was requested on the impact of animal and will remain the same as the remining will not disturb any new areas.  Babina Tiou Traditional Council 14/01/2019 MDC: We will communicate the events of the meeting with the rest of The community.  Municipal councillor – ward 9 and 16  Clir. OA Malakane (ward 9) None None N/A N/A  GTLM – Municipal manager  Mr. Seporo Masemola None None N/A N/A N/A  Mr Philemon Mphahlele N/A None None N/A N/A N/A  Mr Philemon Mphahlele N/A N/A Mphahlele to the Madded Mr MyA Mphahlele to the Madded Mr					incorporated
Babina Tlou Traditional Council 14/01/2019			Havercroft		
Babina Tlou Traditional Council  Ithe process of consultation take before remining commences?  Babina Tlou Traditional Council  Babina Tlou Traditional Council  Ithe process of consultation take before remining commences?  Clarity was requested on the impact of animal and vegetation life.  Babina Tlou Traditional Council  Ithe process of communicate with BECS Services and notify them of the progress.  Ithe impact of animal and vegetation life.  Ithe process of communicate with BECS Services and notify them of the progress.  Ithe impact of animal life will remain the same as the remining will not disturb any new areas  Ithe process of communicate will remain the same as the remining will remain the same as the remining will not disturb any new areas  Ithe process of communicate will remain the same as the remining will not disturb any new areas  Ithe process of communicate will remain the same as the remining will remain the same as the remining will finalise the EMP and hand it in to DMR.  Ithe DMR will become interest on the impact of animal life will remain the same as the remining will not disturb any new areas  Ithe process of communicate with BECS Services will finalise the EMP and hand it in to DMR.  Ithe DMR will become interest of the impact on vegetation life.  Ithe DMR will become the progress.  Ithe impact of animal life will remain the same as the remining will not disturb any new areas  Ithe process of the impact of animal life will remain the same as the remining will not disturb any new areas  Ithe DMR will become the progress.  Ithe impact of the impact on vegetation life.  Ithe DMR will become the progress.  Ithe impact of the impact of the will remain the same as the remining will not disturb any new areas  Ithe process of the impact of the will remain the same as the remining will not disturb any new areas  Ithe process of the impact of the will remain the same as the remining will not disturb any new areas  Ithe process of the impact of the will remain the same as the remining will not distu			Operation to		
the process of communicate with BECS Services and notify them of the progress.  Babina Tlou Traditional Council 14/01/2019 Clarity was requested on the impact of animal and vegetation life. Same as the remining will not disturb any new areas  Babina Tlou Traditional Council 14/01/2019 MDC: We will communicate the events of the meeting with the rest of The community.  Municipal councillor – ward 9 and 16  Clir. OA Malakane (ward 9) None None None None N/A N/A  GTLM - Municipal manager  Clir R.S Mamekoa None None None N/A N/A  Mr Seporo Masemola None None None N/A N/A  Mr Philemon Mphahlele 17 May 2018 Requested to be registered Mphahlele to the			Annesley?		
Babina Tlou Traditional Council  Babina Tlou Traditional Council  Itake before remining commences? progress.  Babina Tlou Traditional Council  Itake before progress.  Clarity was requested on the impact of animal and will remain the vegetation life. will remain the vegetation life. Itake events of The events of The ecommunity.  Municipal councillor – ward 9 and 16  Clir. OA Malakane (ward 9) None None N/A N/A  Itake before progress.  Addendum 4I on vegetation and animal life will remain the vegetation life. Will finalise the the events of The community.  Municipal councillor – ward 9 and 16  Clir. R Khoza (ward 16) None None N/A N/A N/A  Itake before progress.  Addendum 4I will finalise the EMP and hand it in to DMR.  Itake before progress.  Addendum 4I will finalise the EMP and hand it in to DMR.  Itake before progress.  Addendum 4I will finalise the EMP and hand it in to DMR.  Itake before progress.  Addendum 4I will finalise the EMP and hand it in to DMR.  Itake before progress.  Addendum 4I will finalise the EMP and hand it in to DMR.  Itake before progress.  Addendum 4I will finalise the EMP and hand it in to DMR.  Itake before progress.  Addendum 4I will finalise the EMP and hand it in to DMR.  Itake before progress.  Addendum 4I will remain the vegetation in the impact of animal life will remain the vegetation in the will remain the vegetation in the impact of animal life will remain the vegetation in the impact of animal life will remain the vegetation in the impact of animal life will remain the vegetation in the impact of animal life will remain the vegetation in the impact of animal life will remain the vegetation in the impact of animal life will remain the vegetation in the impact of animal life will remain the vegetation in the impact of animal life will remain the vegetation in the impact of animal life will remain the vegetation in the impact of animal life will remain the vegetation in the impact of animal life will remain the vegetation in the impact of animal life will remain the vegetation i	Babina Tlou Traditional Council	14/01/2019	How long will	The DMR will	Addendum 4I
Babina Tlou Traditional Council  Itake before remining commences?  Progress.  Babina Tlou Traditional Council  Itake before remining commences?  Progress.  Addendum 4I on vegetation on vegetation and animal life will remain the vegetation life.  Itake before remining was requested on the impact of animal and will remain the vegetation life.  Itake before remining was requested on the impact of animal and will remain the vegetation life.  Itake before progress.  Addendum 4I on vegetation and animal life will remain the vegetation life.  Itake before progress.  Addendum 4I on vegetation and animal life will remain the vegetation life.  Itake before progress.  Addendum 4I on vegetation and animal life will remain the vegetation life.  Itake before progress.  Addendum 4I on vegetation and animal life will remain the vegetation life.  Itake before progress.  Addendum 4I on vegetation and animal life will remain the vegetation life.  Itake before progress.  Addendum 4I on vegetation and animal life will remain the vegetation life.  Itake before progress.  Addendum 4I on vegetation and animal life will remain the vegetation life.  Itake before progress.  Addendum 4I on vegetation and animal life will remain the vegetation life.  Itake before progress.  Addendum 4I on vegetation and animal life will remain the vegetation in the vegetation and animal life will remain the vegetation in the vegetation and animal life will remain the vegetation and animal life will remain the vegetation and animal life will remain th			the process of	communicate	
Republic			consultation	with BECS	
Babina Tlou Traditional Council  14/01/2019  Clarity was requested on the impact of animal and vegetation life.  Babina Tlou Traditional Council  Babina Tlou Traditional Council  It/01/2019  MDC: We will communicate the events of the meeting with the rest of The community.  Municipal councillor – ward 9 and 16  ClIr. QA Malakane (ward 9)  None  N			take before	Services and	
Babina Tlou Traditional Council  14/01/2019  Clarity was requested on the impact of animal and will remain the same as the remining will not disturb any new areas  Babina Tlou Traditional Council  14/01/2019  MDC: We will communicate the events of the meeting with the rest of The community.  Municipal councillor – ward 9 and 16  Cllr. OA Malakane (ward 9)  None  N			remining	notify them of the	
requested on the impact of and animal life animal and will remain the same as the remining will not disturb any new areas  Babina Tlou Traditional Council 14/01/2019 MDC: We will communicate the events of the meeting with the rest of The community.  Municipal councillor – ward 9 and 16  Cilr. OA Malakane (ward 9) None None N/A N/A  Cilr. R Khoza (ward 16) None None N/A N/A  GTLM - Municipal manager  Cilr R.S Mamekoa None None N/A N/A  SDM - Municipal manager  Mr. Seporo Masemola None None N/A N/A  Mr Philemon Mphahlele 17 May 2018 Requested to Added Mr N/A  Mr Philemon Mphahlele 17 May 2018 Requested to Added Mr N/A  Mr Philemon Mphahlele to the			commences?	progress.	
the impact of animal and will remain the vegetation life.  Babina Tlou Traditional Council  Babina Tlou Traditional Council  It/01/2019  MDC: We will communicate will finalise the EMP and hand it in to DMR.  Municipal councillor – ward 9 and 16  Clir. QA Malakane (ward 9)  None  No	Babina Tlou Traditional Council	14/01/2019	Clarity was	The impact	Addendum 4I
Babina Tlou Traditional Council  MDC: We will communicate the events of The community.  Municipal councillor – ward 9 and 16  CIIr. OA Malakane (ward 9) None None N/A N/A  CIIr. R Khoza (ward 16) None None N/A N/A  GTLM - Municipal manager  CIIr S Mamekoa None None N/A N/A  SDM - Municipal manager  Mr. Seporo Masemola None None N/A N/A N/A  Mr Philemon Mphahlele N/A N/A N/A  Mr Philemon Mphahlele None None N/A N/A N/A  Mr Philemon Mphahlele N/A N/A N/A  Mr Philemon Mphahlele N/A N/A N/A N/A  Mr Philemon Mphahlele N/A			requested on	on vegetation	
Vegetation life.   Same as the remining will not disturb any new areas			the impact of	and animal life	
Babina Tlou Traditional Council  14/01/2019  MDC: We will communicate will finalise the the events of the meeting with the rest of The community.  Municipal councillor – ward 9 and 16  CIIr. OA Malakane (ward 9)  None  None  None  None  None  None  N/A  N/A  MTR Seporo Masemola  None  No			animal and	will remain the	
Babina Tlou Traditional Council  14/01/2019  MDC: We will communicate the events of the events of The community.  Municipal councillor – ward 9 and 16  CIIr. OA Malakane (ward 9)  None			vegetation life.	same as the	
Babina Tlou Traditional Council  14/01/2019  MDC: We will communicate the events of the meeting with the rest of The community.  Municipal councillor – ward 9 and 16  CIIr. OA Malakane (ward 9)  None  None  None  None  None  N/A  Mr Mid  N/A  SDM - Municipal manager  Mr. Seporo Masemola  None				remining will not	
Babina Tlou Traditional Council  14/01/2019  MDC: We will communicate will finalise the the events of the meeting with the rest of The community.  Municipal councillor – ward 9 and 16  Cllr. OA Malakane (ward 9)  None  None  None  None  N/A  N/A  GTLM - Municipal manager  Cllr R.S Mamekoa  None  None  None  None  None  None  N/A  N/A  N/A  SDM - Municipal manager  Mr. Seporo Masemola  None  None  None  None  None  None  N/A  N/A  N/A  N/A  SPM - Municipal manager  Mr. Seporo Masemola  None  None  None  None  None  None  N/A  N/A  N/A  Mr Philemon Mphahlele  17 May 2018  Requested to be registered  Mphahlele to the				disturb any new	
communicate the events of the events of the meeting with the rest of The community.  Municipal councillor – ward 9 and 16  Cllr. OA Malakane (ward 9) None None N/A N/A  Cllr. R Khoza (ward 16) None None N/A N/A  GTLM - Municipal manager  Cllr R.S Mamekoa None None N/A N/A  SDM - Municipal manager  Mr. Seporo Masemola None None N/A N/A  Mr Philemon Mphahlele 17 May 2018 Requested to Added Mr Myhahlele to the				areas	
the events of the meeting with the rest of The community.  Municipal councillor – ward 9 and 16  Cllr. OA Malakane (ward 9) None None N/A N/A  Cllr. R Khoza (ward 16) None None N/A N/A  GTLM - Municipal manager  Cllr R.S Mamekoa None None N/A N/A  SDM - Municipal manager  Mr. Seporo Masemola None None N/A N/A  Mr Philemon Mphahlele 17 May 2018 Requested to Added Mr N/A  be registered Mphahlele to the	Babina Tlou Traditional Council	14/01/2019	MDC: We will	BECS Services	Addendum 4I
the meeting with the rest of The community.  Municipal councillor – ward 9 and 16  CIIr. OA Malakane (ward 9) None None N/A N/A  CIIr. R Khoza (ward 16) None None N/A N/A  GTLM - Municipal manager  CIIr R.S Mamekoa None None N/A N/A  SDM - Municipal manager  Mr. Seporo Masemola None None N/A N/A  Mr Philemon Mphahlele 17 May 2018 Requested to be registered Mphahlele to the			communicate	will finalise the	
with the rest of The community.  Municipal councillor – ward 9 and 16  Cllr. OA Malakane (ward 9) None None N/A N/A  Cllr. R Khoza (ward 16) None None N/A N/A  GTLM - Municipal manager  Cllr R.S Mamekoa None None N/A N/A  SDM - Municipal manager  Mr. Seporo Masemola None None N/A N/A  Mr Philemon Mphahlele 17 May 2018 Requested to Added Mr N/A  be registered Mphahlele to the			the events of	EMP and hand it	
Municipal councillor – ward 9 and 16  Cllr. OA Malakane (ward 9) None None N/A N/A  Cllr. R Khoza (ward 16) None None N/A N/A  GTLM - Municipal manager  Cllr R.S Mamekoa None None N/A N/A  SDM - Municipal manager  Mr. Seporo Masemola None None N/A N/A  Mr Philemon Mphahlele 17 May 2018 Requested to Added Mr N/A be registered Mphahlele to the			the meeting	in to DMR.	
community.   Municipal councillor – ward 9 and 16   Cllr. OA Malakane (ward 9) None None N/A N/A   Cllr. R Khoza (ward 16) None None N/A N/A   GTLM - Municipal manager   Cllr R.S Mamekoa None None N/A N/A   SDM - Municipal manager   Mr. Seporo Masemola None None N/A N/A   Mr Philemon Mphahlele 17 May 2018 Requested to Added Mr Added Mr N/A N/A   be registered Mphahlele to the			with the rest of		
Municipal councillor – ward 9 and 16  Cllr. OA Malakane (ward 9) None None N/A N/A  Cllr. R Khoza (ward 16) None None N/A N/A  GTLM - Municipal manager  Cllr R.S Mamekoa None None N/A N/A  SDM - Municipal manager  Mr. Seporo Masemola None None N/A N/A  Mr Philemon Mphahlele 17 May 2018 Requested to Added Mr N/A be registered Mphahlele to the			The		
Cllr. OA Malakane (ward 9)  None  None  None  None  None  N/A  N/A  Cllr. R Khoza (ward 16)  None  None  None  N/A  Cllr. R Khoza (ward 16)  None  None  None  None  N/A  N/A  SDM - Municipal manager  Mr. Seporo Masemola  None  None  None  None  None  N/A  N/A  Mr Philemon Mphahlele  17 May 2018  Requested to Added Mr N/A  be registered  Mphahlele to the			community.		
Cllr. R Khoza (ward 16)  None	Municipal councillor – ward 9 a	and 16			
Clir R.S Mamekoa None None N/A N/A  SDM - Municipal manager  Mr. Seporo Masemola None None N/A N/A  Mr Philemon Mphahlele 17 May 2018 Requested to Added Mr N/A be registered Mphahlele to the	Cllr. OA Malakane (ward 9)	None	None	N/A	N/A
Cllr R.S Mamekoa None None N/A N/A  SDM - Municipal manager  Mr. Seporo Masemola None None N/A N/A  Mr Philemon Mphahlele 17 May 2018 Requested to Added Mr N/A be registered Mphahlele to the	Cllr. R Khoza (ward 16)	None	None	N/A	N/A
SDM - Municipal manager  Mr. Seporo Masemola None None N/A N/A  Mr Philemon Mphahlele 17 May 2018 Requested to Added Mr N/A  be registered Mphahlele to the	GTLM - Municipal manager				
Mr. Seporo Masemola  None  None  None  N/A  Mr Philemon Mphahlele  17 May 2018  Requested to Added Mr N/A  be registered Mphahlele to the	Cllr R.S Mamekoa	None	None	N/A	N/A
Mr Philemon Mphahlele  17 May 2018  Requested to Added Mr N/A  be registered Mphahlele to the	SDM - Municipal manager				
be registered Mphahlele to the	Mr. Seporo Masemola	None	None	N/A	N/A
	Mr Philemon Mphahlele	17 May 2018	Requested to	Added Mr	N/A
as an I&AP register of I&APs			be registered	Mphahlele to the	
			as an I&AP	register of I&APs	



Interested and Affected	Date comments	Issues raised	EAPs response	Section reference
Parties	received		to issues as	in this ESR where
			mandated by	issues and or
			the applicant	response were
				incorporated
Organs of state				
DWS Mpumalanga –	None	None	N/A	N/A
Lydenburg/Mashishing Office				
Communities				
Roka Malepe Traditional	None	None	N/A	N/A
Council - Manawe Malepe				
Babina Tlou Community -	None	None	N/A	N/A
Mphofelo Kgaogelo				
DRDLR				
Ms Makhanana Senwana	None	None	N/A	N/A
Traditional Leaders				
Roka Malepe Traditional	None	None	N/A	N/A
Council - Manawe Malepe				
Babina Tlou Community -	None	None	N/A	N/A
Mphofelo Kgaogelo				
Limpopo Department of Econo	mic Development,	Environment and	d Tourism	
Juliet Mukhari	None	None	N/A	N/A
Other Competent Authorities a			. ,,	
Limpopo Heritage Resources	None	None	N/A	N/A
Agency (LHRA)				
Limpopo Department of	None	None	N/A	N/A
Agriculture, Forestry and	140110	140110	14/73	14/7
Fisheries (DAFF)				
Lebalelo Water User	10 <sup>th</sup> May 2018	Requested to	Added LWUA to	N/A
Association	19 Way 2010	be registered	the register of	IV/A
B. Bierman		as an I&AP	I&APs	
P. De Wek		as all loal	IXAI 3	
A.J Collier				
Other affected parties				
Historical disadvantaged comm	nunitias			
None identified	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Land claimants	IN/A	IN/A	IN/M	IN/A
	NI/Λ	NI/A	NI/A	NI/A
None	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Interested parties				



Interested	and	Affected	Date comments	Issues raised	EAPs response	Section reference
Parties			received		to issues as	in this ESR where
					mandated by	issues and or
					the applicant	response were
						incorporated
None identifie	ed		N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

## (b) Formal announcement of the project

An advertisement was published in the local newspaper "Platinum Gazette" on 18 May 2018. Refer to Addendum 4C for a copy and proof of this advertisement. Four site notices were placed at and around the site on 17 May 2018. Two site notices were placed at the Havercroft Operation and two site notices were placed at the Annesley Mine. Refer to Addendum 4D for a copy and proof of the site notices placed. Letters were sent to all stakeholders as well as the Babina Tlou and Roka Malepe Community on 15 May 2018.

Details of the application were included in the notices placed in the designated areas mentioned above. The nature and the location of the activity, where further information can be obtained was added to the site notice. The applicant's intention to submit an application is clearly stated on the notice and comments in response to the site notices and advertisements are acknowledged. The competent authority will receive a copy of the newspaper advertisement which indicates the name of the newspaper and the date of publication. A picture of the site notice along with the coordinates of the site notice will also be sent to the competent authority and lastly copies of the written notices that were submitted by email or hand delivered will also be sent to the competent authority.

A community meeting was held on the 29<sup>th</sup> of October 2018 at 13h00 at Gamalepe with the Roko Malepe community. Various issues were raised regarding previous problems that the community has experienced. See Addendum 4G for the minutes of the meeting with the Roko Malepe Community and Addendum 4H for the attendance register of the Roko Malepe Community meeting.

Another community meeting was held on the 14<sup>th</sup> of January 2019 at 11h00 with the Babina Tlou community. The Madibeng Development Committee were present and various issues were raised regarding the application. See Addendum 4I for minutes of the meeting with the Babina Tlou community and their concerns addressed. Refer to Addendum 4J for the attendance register.

# (c) Environmental Scoping Report and Environmental Impact Assessment Report and EMP The ESR was sent to all registered stakeholders, the Babina Tlou and Roka Malepe Community. No comments were received.



The EIAR/EMP will be sent to all registered stakeholders, the Babina Tlou and Roka Malepe Community.

All I&APs are given the opportunity to comment on the final report if they are registered. This includes any issues that they have with the proposed activity and that they believe may be of significance in the consideration of the application. These comments need to be submitted within the specified timeframe.

The submission of the comments is received by the EAP. The organs of state have 40 days to comment (failing to do so will be taken as no comment) The DWS has 60 days in which to comment. If there are no comments within this time, then it will be regarded as no comments given to the CA.

Comments and responses are included in a separate report what is submitted with the EMP. Within 12 days of the date of decision taken by the department, all I&APs should be notified. They should also be notified that an appeal may be lodged.

All comments are included in Part A(h)(iii) below.

## (d) Decision making announcement to stakeholders and I&APs

To be provided once received.

## iii) Summary of issues raised by interested and affected parties

The main concerns that were raised regarding the project was the issue of the graves on the mining site. This issue is being solved by the mine manager and the Community Liaison Officer (CLO). Families are also concerned regarding the deaths of miners during occupation. The mine has put in place various safety protocol and measures to ensure that this does not occur. The issue of employment in terms of each community involved was raised and a working plan was suggested to ensure that the correct community is involved in the correct part of the project. The mined-out quarries at Havercroft were brought up and it was said that they will be sloped.

### iv) The Environmental attributes associated with the sites – baseline environment

The environmental attributes described below include socioeconomic, social, heritage, cultural, geographical, physical and biological aspects. Refer below for the following:

- a. Type of environment affected by the proposed activity its current geographical, physical, biological, socio- economic, and cultural character;
- b. Description of the current land uses:
- c. Description of specific environmental features and infrastructure on the site; and



d. Environmental and current land use map - which shows all environmental, and current land use features.

## 1 Geology

Information for this section was extracted from the Integrated water and waste management plan (IWWMP) (Shangoni Management Services, 2012), and the Geohydrological impact assessment as input to the Section24G Rectification (Shangoni AquaScience, 2017):

The 2628 East Rand 1:250 000 geological map indicates that Annesley Mine is directly underlain by rocks of the Timeball Formation belonging to the Pretoria Group and the Transvaal Sequence of rocks believed to be of Vaalian age.

The Timeball Hill Formation consists of one or more beds of quartzite sandwiched between shale at the base and at the top of the unit. The entire Pretoria Group is widely intruded by dolerite dykes and sills. A minimum of four distinct diabase sills, irregularly weathered and probably of Bushveld Igneous Complex origin are intrusive along bedding planes near and within the ore body.

The intrusive bodies vary in thickness from 0.5 m to 5 m and appear to upwardly transgress through the ore body from east to west. The ore above and below these sills displays alteration through contact metamorphism (EMPR, 2003).

A minimum of six, often very irregular, sub-vertical dolerite dykes of Karoo age transect the ore body along strike, from south-west to north-east. They are usually deeply weathered and deep gullies mark their position on the surface. Their effect on the ore appears to be minimal. Only minor faulting and other structural deformation have been observed. Any water compartments that may exist lie below the mining operations at depths more than 50 m (EMPR, 2003).

The Bushveld Igneous Complex covers some 15,000km² of the old Transvaal Province and in the north-east its thermal metamorphic effects were most penetrative. Argillaceous zones within the Pretoria group underlying the Bushveld intrusion were most conducive to the formation of high grade Andalusite. The greater purity and relatively large crystal size of andalusite in the Limpopo Province as compared to the North-West Province is probably due to metamorphic conditions prevailing for a longer period of time. The Pretoria group is a cyclic sedimentary sequence deposited in a deeply subsiding basin, and shows remarkable consistency in its continuity, width and chemical composition. Marker zones within individual formations of the group have been traced for many kilometres along the strike.



## 1.1 Geology at the site

The ore zone comprises principally of quartz, feldspar, biotite and andalusite bearing hornfels. Accessory minerals of chlorite and staurolite occur. No sulphide mineralisation occurs in the ore body.

The orthorhombic andalusite crystals occur speckled throughout the hornfels, and vary in size between >0.5mm-12mm in cross -section.

The andalusite crystals release readily from the host rock due to the retrogressive formation of sericite along the crystals boundaries. This sericite is formed as a result of weathering. The staurolite hornfels hanging wall bands approximately defines the limit of weathering, which is also the mining limit for suitable ore having readily liberated crystals.

The entire ore body is underlain by a diabase sill approximately 40m below the footwall. The ore body is also intersected at intervals along the strike by dolerite dykes, the extent of which is not known.

## 2 Climate

Information for this section was extracted from the IWWMP (Shangoni Management Services, 2012):

### 2.1 Regional climate

The climate is moderate to hot, with occasional, very hot conditions in the low-lying valleys. The average daily temperature variation is 15°C. The area is part of a major mountain range and the winds blow consistently from the northeast. The rainy season lasts from late October until April with a maximum in November, mainly in the form of thunderstorms from the south west, but also light to moderate precipitation blown in from the east. The rainfall is fairly low and in 12% of all years there are severe drought conditions. There is no frost.

## 2.2 Rainfall and evaporation

The mean monthly rainfall of the area is 559mm, which is higher than that of the surrounding area as a result of the microclimate (topography and aspect).

Table 7: Rainfall statistics

Month	Average (mm)	Days with more than 1 mm rain	
January	95	9,8	
February	84	6,8	
March	70	6,8	
April	20	2,6	
May	8	2,2	



Month	Average (mm)	Days with more than 1 mm rain
June	4	1,3
July	4	1,3
August	8	1,7
September	19	1,8
October	59	6,3
November	102	10,1
December	86	8,4
Annual	559	59

Table 8: Evaporation

Month	Evaporation (mm)
January	212
February	174
March	174
April	139
May	121
June	102
July	119
August	167
September	228
October	259
November	228
December	217
Average	2140

#### 2.3 **Temperature**

Table 9: Temperature for Annesley

Month	Temperature		
	Max	Min	
January	30,1	17,3	
February	29,7	17,4	
March	28,2	16,2	
April	27,4	12,1	
May	24,5	8,1	
June	21,7	3,9	
July	21,6	4,0	
August	24,0	6,9	



Management F	Programme
--------------	-----------

Month	Temperature		
	Max	Min	
September	27,5	11,3	
October	30,4	14,6	
November	30,2	16,4	
December	30,1	17,4	
Annual	27,1	12,2	

#### 2.4 Extreme events

The area experiences several extreme events on a regular basis, including frost, hail, drought, and high winds.

## 3 Topography

Information for this section was extracted from the Geohydrological impact assessment as input to the Section24G Rectification (Shangoni AquaScience, 2017):

The elevation of the mining area varies between 780 meters above mean sea level (mamsl) in the north to over 1070 mamsl in the south. The mining area is located on the north-eastern slope of the Radingwane Mountain. The ore body outcrops along the lower slopes of the mountain range, close to the valley floor. The quarry area starts at an elevation of 780 mamsl rising up the northern slope of the Radingwane Mountain range to a maximum elevation of 987 mamsl. Although the slope is intersected by many well-defined gullies, no major ravines are present on-site.

## 4 Soil

Information for this section was extracted from the Approved EMP (Shangoni Management Services, 2006):

The mining area is dominated by rock with limited soils. Red-massive or weak structured soils with high base status. The soils on the mountain slopes overlying the ore body are skeletal and only developed in localised potholes and as a component of the scree made up of metamorphic (hornfels) schists, diabase still material and quartzite rocks.

The major components of the topsoil are weathered silica and clay materials, chiefly loamy biotite and rich in porphyroblasts of staurolite and or garnets and cordierite. The topsoil is generally friable, politic, with an abundance of gravel and pebbles of all sizes. The terrain and types of soil in the area make it prone to erosion.



### 5 Pre-mining land capability, land use and existing infrastructure

Information for this section was extracted from the Approved EMP (Shangoni Management Services, 2006):

The area is disturbed by the existing mining excavation. The area is classified as Wilderness land as defined by the Chamber of Mines Rehabilitation Guideline. The slope of the majority of the site is considered steep, with soils being less than 250mm in depth and the volume of rocks larger than 100mm being more than 50%. The land was classified to be arable land and suitable grazing land. The entire mining area roughly comprises: Wilderness land: 50% Arable Land: 0% Grazing Land: 50% Wetland: 0%

# 6 Vegetation

Certain information for this section was extracted from the Approved EMP (Shangoni Management Services, 2006):

The mine is located in the Savanna Biome and within the Mixed Bushveld and Sourish Mixed Bushveld veld type (According to Acocks 1975). According to Mucina and Rutherford this area is classified as the Ohrigstad Mountain Bushveld vegetation unit (SVcb 26). This vegetation unit is characterised by open to dense woody layer, with associated woody and herbaceous shrubs and closed to open grass layer. Moderate to steep slopes on mountainsides and sometimes deeply incised valleys; also fairly flat terrain in a few places.

The quarry and plant areas are significantly disturbed. Heaps of overburden occur near the quarries and these heaps are heavily infested with *Xanthium spinosum* (Spiny cocklebur) and *X strumarium* (Large cocklebur). Of particular concern is the invasion of *Nicotiana glauca* (Wild tobacco) and *Opuntia* spp (Common prickly pear).

No red data species were noted.

Table 10: Invader plant species found on Annesley Andalusite Mine

Scientific name	Common name
Nicotiana glauca	Wild tobacco
Xanthium spinosum	Spiny cocklebur
Xanthium strumarium	Large cocklebur

### 7 Animal life

Information for this section was extracted from the Approved EMP (Shangoni Management Services, 2006):



### 7.1 Mammals

Management Programme

The following larger mammals (amongst many more) are found in the general area: Kudu (*Tragelaphus strepiceros*), Klipspringer (*Oreotragus oreotrachus*), Grey Rhebok (*Pelea capreolus*) which is classed as Endangered, Common Duiker (*Sylvicapra grimmia*), Grey buck (*Raphicerus malanotis*), Bushpig (*Potamochoerus porcus*), Caracal (*Felis caracal*), Jackal (*Canis mesomelas*), African Wild Cat (*Felis lydic*)a, Leopard (*Panthera pardus*) which is classed as Endangered, Porcupine (*Hystrix africaeaustralis*), Dassie (*Procavia capensis*), Brown Hyaena (*Hyaena brunnea*), Slender Mongoose (*Galerella sanguinea*), Scrub Hare, (*Lepus saxatilis*), Chacma Baboon (*Papio ursinus*).

### 7.2 Birds

Birds that were recorded on the site were identified visually and with aid of audio recognition. Only a small fraction of the bird population was encountered. One of the species on the list White backed vulture is labelled by the IUCN (2000) as "vulnerable to extinction with an estimated continuing decline of at least 10% within the next 10 years. A pair of Black Eagles nest less than 1km from the current mining site.

#### 8 Surface water

Information for this section was extracted from the IWWMP (Shangoni Management Services, 2012), the Aquatic Ecosystem Delineation Report (Galago Environmental, 2016), and the Geohydrological impact assessment as input to the Section24G Rectification (Shangoni AquaScience, 2017):

The mine lies in the Primary Catchment of the Olifants River and the Quaternary Catchment referred to as the B71F draining region as defined by the DWS. The applicable water management area is the Olifants and the responsibility of the Mpumalanga Regional DWS. The quaternary catchment B71F has a mean annual precipitation of 799.91mm and mean annual runoff of 101.3%.

The area in which the mine is located shows an abundance of non-perennial streams flowing down the escarpment. There is no permanent natural surface water on the mining site. The area is drained by several non-perennial water courses. The most southern section of the mine area is drained by several intermittent streams flowing into a larger northern flowing stream which eventually confluences with the Olifants River. The northern section of the mine is drained by a number of NW flowing intermittent streams which flows to the Sekgorong River, forming part of the greater Olifants River catchment.

Water quality monitoring was done in March 2016 (Chemical and Microbiological Analysis Report: Letaba Environmental Services, 2018). Refer to Table 11 below for the results.



Table 11: Surface water quality

Variable	Unit	Limit	Sample n	Sample number		
			ANN1	ANN3	ANN6	
рН		6.0-9.0	7.84	7.36	7.81	
Conductivity*	mS/m	≤70	15.9	363.0	414.0	
Total dissolved solids	mg/l	≤450	116	2106	2474	
Fluoride	mg/l	≤1.0	<0.05	<0.05	<0.05	
Chloride	mg/l	≤100	27.0	397.9	479.3	
Nitrate: N	mg/l	≤6	<0.02	<0.02	1.35	
Phosphate: P	mg/l		<0.02	<0.02	<0.02	
Sulphate	mg/l	≤200	19.3	389.0	511.0	
p-Alkalinity			0.0	0.0	0.0	
m-Alkalinity			12.3	137.5	278.1	
Carbonate			0.0	0.0	0.0	
Bicarbonate			15.0	167.7	339.1	
Total hardness		≤50	72.7	941.0	1097.7	
Calcium hardness			48.1	302.0	341.2	
Magnesium hardness			24.5	639.1	756.6	
Calcium	mg/l	≤32	19.3	120.9	136.6	
Magnesium	mg/l	≤30	6.0	155.2	183.7	
Sodium dissolved	mg/l	≤100	5.3	161.7	326.0	
Potassium dissolved	mg/l	≤50	0.87	9.11	5.02	
Iron dissolved	mg/l	≤0.1	<0.002	<0.002	<0.002	
Manganese dissolved	mg/l	≤0.05	<0.005	<0.005	<0.005	
Sum Cation	me/l		1.70	26.07	36.25	
Sum Anion	me/l		1.72	26.09	36.28	
Turbidity	Ntu		20.11	8.21	47.99	
Suspended solids	mg/l		29	11	58	
Total viable organisms*	per 100ml	≤75	53	278	307	
Total coliform Org	per ml	≤5	<1	89	111	
Faecal coliform Org	per ml	0	<1	3	53	

ANN1 - Upstream of the Segorong Spruit

ANN3 - Penge Dam

ANN6- Pollution control dam



#### 9 Groundwater

Information for this section was extracted from the Geohydrological evaluation for the IWULA report (Aurecon, 2010)) (from the IWWMP, 2012 (Shangoni Management Services)), and the Geohydrological impact assessment as input to the Section24G Rectification (Shangoni AquaScience, 2017):

According to the published 1:250 000 geological map (2430 Pelgrims Rest), the area under investigation is underlain by the Timeball Hill Formation that forms part of the Pretoria Group and mainly comprises of andesitic lava, shale and quartzite. Diabase dykes and sills of the Upper Vaalium age have intruded the Pretoria Group.

The ore zone principally comprises of quartz, feldspar, biotite and Andalusite bearing hornfels. The ore body outcrops/sub-outcrops against the north-eastern slopes of the Radingwane Mountain, which is capped by Daspoort Quartzite of the Daspoort Formation. The surface of the ore body is covered by a layer of rubble, between 0.5m to 6m thick, consisting primarily of quartzite boulders, occasional lava boulders and very little soil.

The ore body is a metamorphically altered alumina-rich shale horizon. It is essentially a quartzbiotite-andalusite hornfels with minor amounts of garnet and staurolite. The ore body varies between 40m and 50m in thickness, strikes NW and dips on average 15° to the SW.

The geological map indicates the presence of several regional linear structures, comprising of NESW striking dolerite dykes and NW-SE striking diabase dykes. The drainage line through the mine area runs parallel to the regional orientation of the diabase dykes.

They are usually deeply weathered and deep gullies mark their position on the surface. Their effect on the ore appears to be minimal.

A minimum of four distinct diabase sills, irregularly weathered and probably of Bushveld Igneous Complex origin, are intrusive along bedding planes in the vicinity of and within the ore body. They vary in thickness from 0.5m to 5m and appear to upwardly transgress through the ore body from east to west. The ore above and below these sills, display alteration through contact metamorphism. Only minor faulting and other structural deformation have been observed.

Groundwater occurrence favours weathered shale, brecciated or jointed zones and especially the contact zone between intrusive diabase sheets and shale. These contact zones would usually act as targets for groundwater exploration. To the contrary it must be stated that little groundwater seepage from the contact



zones between shales and diabase/dolerite dykes intercepted in the mining area occur. During the site visit, a small volume of water accumulated at the base of the open quarries was observed. No active dewatering takes place in the open casts. The contact between the diabase and shale where fracturing usually takes place and act as preferential flow paths for groundwater may have been metamorphosed with no distinct contact and consequently, little fracturing. Future exploratory drilling on these contact zones will shed more light on this issue.

# 9.1 Groundwater use

There is only one existing borehole (ANBH Mine) within the Annesley mining area, which deliver a yield of approximately 10 000 l/d (0.12 l/s). Water from this borehole is used as domestic water (cleaning and personal hygiene purposes only). Some boreholes outside the mining area exist, most of which are being used by the local community.

Table 12: Summary of boreholes identified during the hydrocensus

BH number	Owner	Static water level (mbgl)	User application
ANBH Mine	Annesley Mine	BH Sealed	Domestic use
ANBH Penge	Annesley Mine	78.8	Process Water
ANBH Chief	Segorong chief	BH Sealed	Domestic use
H12-2270	DWS	BH Sealed	Domestic use
BH School	Ga Malepe school	BH Sealed	Domestic use
ANW 1 (well)	Ga Malepe community	0.5	Domestic use

From the hydrocensus data it can be concluded that groundwater is being used as source of potable water in the area. Based on the acquired data, the average yield of a successful borehole in the study area is in the region of 1t/s (3,600t/hour). Based on the investigation and data acquired from the mine, a volume of ~1350m³/day of groundwater are being abstracted from the mine and adjacent properties. The majority hereof is being abstracted from the "Old Penge Shaft" which amounts to an average daily abstraction of 1,333m³/day. The mine further abstracts less than 10,000t/day from a borehole ("ANBH Mine") located close to the Annesley plant. The neighbouring communities utilise groundwater for domestic purposes from 4 identified boreholes and 1 hand dug well.

It must be stated that it was not always practical possible to measure the yields of the boreholes and as no records for the boreholes, exist, a qualified guess was made. This was done in conjunction with information provided by mine personnel. The same applies for the volume of water being abstracted from boreholes.



### 9.2 Groundwater levels

The mining area is underlain by a diabase sill of approximately 100m thick, and is concordant with the sedimentary rock in which it intrudes. This sill is approximately 40m below the footfall of the ore body. Several dolerite dykes intersect the ore body, but none of these will be mined, leaving the water compartments locally intact. Due to the highly undulating nature of the topography, varied geology and localised presence of dykes and sills, the depth to water table in the B71F quaternary catchment varies significantly. This could be less than 10mbgl in some places and more than 40mbgl at others.

It was not possible to obtain measured water levels from the hydrocensus boreholes due to the fact that all the boreholes identified were sealed to prevent equipment theft and contamination. The water level of the "Old Penge Shaft" was measured to be 78.8 mbgl. This is however not representative of the static regional groundwater level as it is deeper than the surrounding boreholes and major pumping from this shaft takes place. The water level in the hand dug well was measured to be at 0.5mbgl. A NGA hydrocensus of registered boreholes in the B71F Quaternary Catchment was therefore undertaken to establish regional groundwater levels for the area.

A total of eight boreholes in the B71F catchment are registered with the Department of Water Affairs (DWA) with only five (5) boreholes located in relatively close proximity to Annesley or within similar geology. The water levels for these boreholes range between 12.93mbgl and 36mbgl.

# 9.3 Aquifer parameters

Falling head tests ("Slug Tests")

No boreholes were accessible to conduct falling head tests ("slug tests"). The test involves continuous measuring of the water level response in a borehole to the rapid displacement of water therein. This displacement or rise in water level is caused as a result from the introduction of a slug below the rest water level. Data acquired from the "slug tests" are used to calculate the hydraulic conductivity of the substrata in the immediate vicinity of the borehole in order to get an idea of the groundwater flow velocity. Theoretical K-values are presented in Table 13 in order to compare groundwater flow velocities in different rock types.

Table 13: Comparison of the hydraulic conductivity in different rock types

Rock Type	K (m/day)
Shale	1 x 10 <sup>-8</sup> - 1 x 10 <sup>-6</sup>
Sandstone	10 <sup>-3</sup> - 1
Limestone	10-5 - 1
Basalt	3 x 10 <sup>-4</sup> - 3
Granite	1 x 10 <sup>-4</sup> - 3 x 10 <sup>-2</sup>



Rock Type	K (m/day)
Slate	10-8 – 10-5
Schist	$10^{-7} - 10^{-4}$
Groundwater movement	
Extremely slow	1 x 10 <sup>-6</sup>
Very slow	1 x 10 <sup>-4</sup>
Slow	1 x 10 <sup>-2</sup>
Moderate	1
Fast	10
Very fast	100

Keeping the (1) relatively low yielding boreholes, (2) little/no groundwater seepage into the open quarries and (3) occurring geological formations in mind, it can be concluded that groundwater movement at the mine will be very to extremely slow. The rock will have a typical hydraulic conductivity of 10<sup>-6</sup> to 10<sup>-4</sup>. The advantage of a low hydraulic conductivity is that any pollutants that might accidently leak to the aquifer will migrate at very slow pace.

### 9.4 Aquifer classification

Management Programme

The DWS have characterised South African aquifers based on the rock formations in which it occurs together with its capacity to transmit water to boreholes drilled into specific formations. The water bearing properties of rock formations in South Africa can be classified into four classes defined as:

# 1. Class A - Intergranular

 Aquifers associated either with loose and unconsolidated formations such as sands and gravels or with rock that has weathered to only partially consolidated material.

#### 2. Class B - Fractured

 Aquifers associated with hard and compact rock formations in which fractures, fissures and/or joints occur that are capable of both storing and transmitting water in useful quantities.

# 3. Class C - Karst

 Aquifers associated with carbonate rocks such as limestone and dolomite in which groundwater is predominantly stored in and transmitted through cavities that can develop in these rocks.

#### 4. Intergranular and fractured

 Aquifers that represent a combination of Class A and B aquifer types. This is a common characteristic of South African aquifers. Substantial quantities of water are stored in the



intergranular voids of weathered rock but can only be tapped via fractures penetrated by boreholes drilled into the fractured aquifer.

Each of these classes is further subdivided into groups relating to the capacity of an aquifer to transmit water to boreholes, typically measured in I/s. The groups therefore represent various ranges of borehole yields.

The water-bearing properties of the shale formations are generally more favourable than those of the quartzites due to their greater susceptibility to weathering. The quartzites do, however, constitute productive aquifers where these rocks are fractured and especially in the presence of ferruginization. Lesser and/ or more isolated groundwater occurrences are associated with fault and associated shear zones and with contact zones between diabase sills, dykes, shale and quartzite. Water may also occur in occasional joints and fractures in fresh diabase.

Annesley Andalusite Mine is located in a **d3 aquifer class** region. The groundwater yield potential is classed as low to medium on the basis that most of the boreholes on record in vicinity of the study area produce between 0.5 and 2.0l/s. Higher yields do sporadically occur where groundwater is tapped from good water yielding fractures.

### 9.5 Regional aquifer classification

According to the regional aquifer classification map of South Africa, the Timeball Hill aquifer has been identified as a minor aquifer with relatively good groundwater quality (average = <300mg/l TDS). Based on the underlying hydrogeology of the project area the aquifer can be classified according to the Parsons classification system as follows:

- Intergranular and fractured shale/quartzites/diamictite of the Timeball Hill Formation
  - a. Minor-aquifer

# 9.6 Aquifer vulnerability

Tables 14 - 17 summarizes the aquifer classification vulnerability scores for the aquifer/s in vicinity of Annesley Andalusite Mine. The final DRASTIC score of 101 indicates that the aquifer/s in the region has a medium susceptibility to pollution and a medium level of aquifer protection is therefore required.

Table 14: DRASTIC vulnerability scores

Factor	Range/Type	Weight	Rating	Total
D	15 - 30 m	5	3	15
R	10 - 50 mm	4	6	24



Factor	Range/Type	Weight	Rating	Total
Α	Fractured	3	6	18
S	Loamy sand	2	7	14
Т	0-2%	1	10	10
I	Pretoria	5	4	20
С	-	3	-	-
DRASTIC SCORE = 101				

In order to achieve the Groundwater Quality Management (GQM) Index a point scoring system as presented in Table 15 and Table 16 was used.

Table 15: Ratings for the Aquifer System Management and Second Variable Classifications

Aquifer System Management Classification			
Class	Points	Study Area	
Sole Source Aquifer System	6		
Major Aquifer System	4		
Minor Aquifer System	2	2	
Non-Aquifer System	0		
Special Aquifer System	0-6		
Second Variable Classification (weathered/fractured)			
High	3		
Medium	2	2	
Low	1		

Table 16: Ratings for the GQM Classification System

Aquifer System Management Classification			
Class	Points	Study Area	
Sole Source Aquifer System	6		
Major Aquifer System	4		
Minor Aquifer System	2	2	
Non-Aquifer System	0		
Special Aquifer System	0-6		
Second Variable Classification (weathered/fractured)			
High	3		
Medium	2	2	
Low	1		



The occurring aquifer(s), in terms of the above definitions, is classified as a minor aquifer system. The vulnerability, or the tendency or likelihood for contamination to reach a specified position in the groundwater system after introduction at some location above the uppermost aquifer, in terms of the above, is classified as medium.

The level of groundwater protection based on the GQM Classification (Table 17):

GQM Index = Aquifer System Management x Aquifer Vulnerability

$$= 2 X 2 = 4$$

Table 17: GQM index for the study area

GQM Index	Level of Protection	Study Area
<1	Limited	
1-3	Low level	
3-6	Medium level	4
6-10	High level	
>10	Strictly non-degradation	

The ratings for the Aquifer System Management Classification and Aquifer Vulnerability Classification yield a GQM Index of 4 for the study area, indicating that a **medium level groundwater protection** may be required.

Due to the medium/high GQM index calculated for this area, a medium/high level of protection is needed to adhere to DWS's water quality objectives. Reasonable and sound groundwater protection measures are required to ensure that no further cumulative pollution affects the aquifer, even in the long term.

In terms of DWS's overarching water quality management objectives which is i) protection of human health and ii) the protection of the environment, the significance of this aquifer classification is that if any potential risk exist, measures must be triggered to limit the risk to the environment, which in this case is the i) protection of the secondary underlying aquifers and ii)) the non-perennial streams draining the project area.

#### 9.7 Geochemical characterisation

Shangoni (2014) performed a geochemical study on four (4) mine residue deposit (MRD) samples to identify contaminants of concern and risks pertaining to day to day operation of the mine. Stormwater/leachate emanating from these MRDs are directed towards the pollution control and other water management infrastructure. A summary of the geochemical assessment is discussed below.

The waste locations sampled were:



- Overburden
- HMS Waste
- Primary Waste
- Slimes Slurry (tailings)

The following tests were included in their assessment:

- Aqueous extraction. This procedure indicates which chemical constituents may be solubilised by deionised water.
- Static acid base accounting (ABA). Static tests are the analytical tests used as a screening criterion of the samples, used to determine the difference between the acid-generating capability and the acid-neutralising potential of the samples. Originally developed for the coal mining industry, this procedure provides information on potential of solids to generate or neutralise acid formation and is correlated to the concentration of sulphides and neutralising minerals.

# 9.7.1 Acid Base Accounting

The results of the ABA analyses are displayed in Table 18 and rock classification guideline in Table 19. According to these results all of the samples are classified as a Type III rock, which according to the guidelines imply that they are non-acid forming. This is largely due to the low almost absent sulphur content. Although the *HMS waste* calculated a Neutralising Potential Ratio (NPR), of 1:1.60, the very low sulphur content of the waste resulted in a Type III classification.

Table 18: Results of acid-base accounting

Acid – Base Accounting	Sample Identification			
Modified Sobek (EPA-600)	Primary Waste	Overburden	Slimes	HMS Waste
Paste pH	7.5	8.0	7.9	8.0
Total Sulphur (%) (LECO)	0.02	0.01	0.02	0.01
Acid Potential (AP) (kg/t)	0.625	0.313	0.625	0.313
Neutralization Potential (NP)	7.00	2.50	5.50	0.500
Nett Neutralization Potential (NNP)	6.38	2.19	4.88	0.187
NPR (NP: AP)	11.20	8.00	8.80	1.60
Rock Type	III	III	III	III

Table 19: Rock Classification

TYPE I	Potentially Acid Forming	Total S(%) > 0.25% and NP:AP ratio 1:1 or less



TYPE II	Intermediate (uncertain)	Total S(%) > 0.25% and NP:AP ratio 1:3 or less
TYPE III	Non-Acid Forming	Total S(%) < 0.25% and NP:AP ratio 1:3 or greater

### 9.7.2 Leachate analysis

The results of the aqueous extraction test are displayed in Table 20. The results were evaluated according to the SANS 241: 2011 water quality standards. Where no standard is proposed in the SANS guideline or where relevant, health-based water quality standards as proposed by the DWS (DWAF, 1996) were sourced.

**Note** that the solid-to-liquid ratio of 1:4 used in the aqueous laboratory extractions can be considered relatively similar to reality but it must be stressed that in-situ conditions can never be 100% simulated under laboratory conditions. Therefore, any exceedance of the water quality standards should be treated as an indication of potential contaminants only.

The results in Table 20 indicate that the waste is chemically inactive/inert.

Table 20: Leach results evaluated according to the SANS 241: 2015 water quality guidelines

Parameter	SANS 241: 2015   Primary Waste   Overburden		Slimes	HMS Waste	
рН	5.0 - 9.7	7.5	8.0	7.9	8.1
TDS	1200.0	156.0	94.0	176.0	140.0
Alkalinity		64.0	44.0	20.0	16.0
(CaCO <sub>3)</sub>	-	04.0	44.0	20.0	10.0
Chloride (CI)	300.0	27.0	11.0	25.0	21.0
Sulphate (SO <sub>4)</sub>	500.0	21.0	9.0	55.0	44.0
Nitrate (NO <sub>3</sub> -N)	11.0	0.20	1.80	<0.2	<0.2
Fluoride (F)	1.5	1.30	1.00	0.40	0.40
Silver (Ag)	na	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025
Aluminium (AI)	0.3	0.282	0.537	0.687	0.471
Arsenic (As)	0.05	0.013	<0.010	<0.010	<0.010
Boron (B)	na	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025
Barium (Ba)	na	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025
Beryllium (Be)	na	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025
Bismuth (Bi)	na	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025
Calcium (Ca)	-	<2	2	4	3
Cadmium (Cd)	0.003	<0.005	<0.005	<0.005	<0.005
Cobalt (Co)	0.5	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025
Chromium (Cr)	0.05	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025



Parameter	SANS 241: 2015	Primary Waste	Overburden	Slimes	HMS Waste
Copper (Cu)	2	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025
Iron (Fe)	2	0.137	0.290	0.633	0.511
Potassium (K)	-	<1.00	<1.00	1.0	1.0
Lithium (Li)	na	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025
Magnesium (Mg)	-	<2	<2	4	3
Manganese (Mn)	0.5	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025
Molybdenum (Mo)	na	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025
Sodium (Na)	200	46	28	33	27
Nickel (Ni)	0.07	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025
Phosphorous (P)	-	0.028	0.032	<0.025	<0.025
Lead (Pb)	0.01	<0.020	<0.020	<0.020	<0.020
Antimony (Sb)	0.02	<0.010	<0.010	<0.010	<0.010
Selenium (Se)	0.01	<0.020	<0.020	<0.020	<0.020
Tin (Sn)	-	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025
Strontium (Sr)	-	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025
Titanium (Ti)	-	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025
Vanadium (V)	0.2	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025
Wolfram (W)	-	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025
Zinc (Zn)	5	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025
Zirconium (Zr)	-	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025	<0.025

Results are given in mg/l, except for pH

Solid to liquid ratio - 1: 4

Management Programme

The salinity (TDS) is low with results ranging between 94 mg/l and 176 mg/l, which is mostly contributed by chloride (Cl), sulphate (SO<sub>4</sub>) and sodium (Na), while the pH is neutral to slightly alkaline ranging between 7.9 and 8.1. The primary waste recorded an arsenic (As) concentration of 0.013 mg/l which slightly exceeds the SANS guideline but is still within DWS health based guideline of <0.05 mg/l. None of the remaining parameters exceed the SANS guideline and is overall of good quality and of fairly low/inert chemical reactivity.

# 9.8 Water quality

# 9.81 Sampling sites

Water quality data was sourced from (Letaba Environmental Services, 2018), report. Information pertaining to the available water quality datasets are shown in Table 21.



Table 21: Water sampling points for chemical constituents

Location name	Comments
ANW1	
ANBH Penge	ANN3 – Penge Dam. This water is abstracted from the shaft next to the borehole.
ANBH Chief	Correct description is: H12-2270. DWS borehole
ANBH Mine	ANN4
ANQ6	
H12-2270	Additional borehole to be drilled. Must be renamed to ANBH Chief

# 9.8.2 Water quality

# 9.8.2.1 Interpretation according to relevant standards

Standards & guidelines applicable to the geohydrological investigation were the South African water quality guidelines namely i) the domestic colour coded classification system and; ii) the South African National Standard for drinking water. The hydrochemical results for the water samples taken at Annesley Andalusite Mine, interpreted according to the South African drinking water guidelines, are displayed in Table 22.

Table 22: Hydrochemical data

Variable	Unit	Limit	Sample number
			ANN 4
рН		7.84-8.62	7.72
Conductivity*	mS/m	152.40	447.0
Total dissolved solids	mg/l	450	2836
Fluoride	mg/l	0.43	<0.05
Chloride	mg/l	302.40	414.6
Nitrate: N	mg/l	0.40	<0.02
Phosphate: P	mg/l		<0.02
Sulphate	mg/l	57.27	407.0
p-Alkalinity			0.0
m-Alkalinity			341.3
Carbonate			0.0
Bicarbonate			416.1
Total hardness*		<200.0	1004.7
Calcium hardness			199.0
Magnesium hardness			805.7
Calcium	mg/l	74.13	79.7
Magnesium	mg/l	58.85	316.2
Sodium dissolved*	mg/l	≤100	6.97



Variable	Unit	Limit	Sample number
			ANN 4
Potassium dissolved*	mg/l	≤250	0.87
Iron dissolved*	mg/l	≤0.200	<0.002
Manganese dissolved*	mg/l	≤0.05	<0.005
Sum Cation	me/l		34.01
Sum Anion	me/l		34.03
Turbidity	Ntu		4.93
Suspended solids	mg/l		8
Total viable organisms*	per 100ml	≤100	162
Total coliform Org*	per ml	≤1	22
Faecal coliform Org	per ml	0	<1

ANN4- Plant Borehole

Management Programme

From Table 22, the following can be concluded:

Of concern are the high microbiological results in ANN4. These results are possibly from the settlements in the area.

TDS and EC for ANN4 were above the IWUL limit. The total dissolved solids (TDS) is a measure of the amount of various inorganic salts dissolved in water. The TDS concentration is directly proportional to the electrical conductivity (EC) of water. Since EC is much easier to measure than TDS, it is routinely used as an estimate of the TDS concentration. TDS are likely to accumulate in water moving downstream because salts are continuously being added through natural and manmade processes while very little of it is removed by precipitation or natural processes. Domestic and industrial effluent discharges and surface runoff from urban, industrial and cultivated areas are examples of the types of return flows that may contribute to increased TDS concentrations. High TDS concentrations in surface water are also caused by evaporation in water bodies which are isolated from natural drainage systems. The saline pans in the central parts of South Africa are such water bodies. Health effects related to TDS are minimal at concentrations below 2, 000 – 3,000 mg/l TDS.

**Chloride for ANN4 was above the IWUL limit. Chloride** inputs to surface waters can arise from irrigation return flows, sewage effluent discharges and various industrial processes. Chloride is only detectable by taste at concentrations exceeding approximately 200 mg/l. At chloride concentrations greater than 200 mg/l, there is likely to be a significant shortening of the lifetime of domestic appliances as a result of corrosion.



Management Programme

Magnesium for ANN4 was above the IWUL limit. Magnesium has a bitter taste. This property serves as a natural protection against the ingestion of potentially harmful concentrations. As excess magnesium is readily excreted by the kidney, adverse effects such as the suppression of the central nervous system and heart function are rarely seen. Excess magnesium intake, particularly as the sulphate, results in diarrhoea. Magnesium, together with calcium, is responsible for scaling problems caused by deposits of carbonates in appliances using heating elements and plumbing which transports hot water, and for inhibiting the lathering of soap which results in scum formation.

Calcium for ANN4 was above the IWUL limit. Mineral deposits of calcium are common, usually as calcium carbonate, phosphate or sulphate. Calcium bicarbonate, chloride and nitrate are very soluble in water, calcium sulphate is moderately soluble and calcium carbonate and phosphate are insoluble. There is no conclusive evidence to support claims for the increased incidence of human kidney and urinary tract stones (urolithiasis) resulting from the long-term consumption of water with high concentrations of calcium. Calcium is known to mitigate against the toxicity of certain heavy metals. High concentrations of calcium impair the lathering of soap by the formation of insoluble calcium salts of long chain fatty acids that precipitate as scums. This results in excessive soap consumption used in personal hygiene and, in rare cases, household cleaning operations. In addition, the scums are not aesthetically pleasing and lead to, in the long-term, the marking of enamelled surfaces such as baths and hand basins (Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, 1996).

Sulphate for ANN4 was above the IWUL limit. Sulphate is a common constituent of water and arises from the dissolution of mineral sulphates in soil and rock, particularly calcium sulphate (gypsum) and other partially soluble sulphate minerals. Since most sulphates are soluble in water, and calcium sulphate relatively soluble, sulphates when added to water tend to accumulate to progressively increasing concentrations. High concentrations of sulphate exert predominantly acute health effects (diarrhoea). These are temporary and reversible since sulphate is rapidly excreted in the urine. Individuals exposed to elevated sulphate concentrations in their drinking water for long periods, usually become adapted and cease to experience these effects. Sulphate concentrations of 600 mg/R and more cause diarrhoea in most individuals and adaptation may not occur (Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, 1996).

Total hardness for ANN4 was above the IWUL limit. Total hardness for ANN1 was above the Domestic use: Target Water Quality Guidelines limit. The natural hardness of water is influenced by the geology of the catchment and the presence of soluble calcium and magnesium minerals. Excessive hardness in water used for domestic purposes causes two main problems. It forms scale on heat exchange surfaces such as cooking utensils, hot water pipes, kettles and geysers. It results in an increase in soap required to produce a lather when bathing and in household cleaning.



### 9.8.2.1 Groundwater Composition

Major ion composition of the water is used to classify it into various chemical types. Piper (Figure 7), Stiffs (Figure 8) and a Schoeller diagram (Figure 9) were used to present this classification graphically.

The Piper and Stiffs in Figure 7 and 8, respectively indicate that:

- Groundwater from ANBH Chief is typical of fresh recently recharged groundwater with a distinct Mg/Ca-HCO<sub>3</sub>- character.
- Quarry 6 (ANQ6) displays a water type characteristic of rainwater subjected to evaporation mixed with water of a Mg-SO<sub>4</sub> type character. This water type may also be an indication of ion exchange with the host rock.
- The hand dug well displays a signature of a Na-HCO<sub>3</sub> type water that is typical of shallow and 'open' groundwater systems in close contact with igneous types of rock or that has an evaporative signature.
- Groundwater from the Penge Shaft (*ANBH Penge*), the on-mine borehole (*ANBH Mine*), including the process water and *PCD* group together and display **similar signatures** based on their respective Stiff diagrams. All four hydrochemical sets display distinct Na/Mg-SO<sub>4</sub>(Cl) characters.

A Schoeller diagram displaying the ion ratios for the sampling localities was constructed and shown in Figure 9. The diagram indicates similar ion compositions for the *process water*, *ANBH Mine*, and *ANBH Penge*, the process water sample and water within the PCD. Background groundwater sources display unrelated *signatures* compared to groundwater from the on-mine borehole – *ANBH Mine*, located downgradient from the PCD.

Water abstracted from the Penge Shaft and used in the plant is polluted most probably due to historical mining activities at the old Asbestos Penge Mine and/ or due to the depth of the shaft. The fact that the groundwater from the Penge Shaft, the on-mine borehole, the process water and the PCD share very distinct similarities in ion composition, point towards a process related groundwater contamination effect as measured in the groundwater at ANBH Mine. The greatest contributing factor to the poor water quality of ANBH Mine is most probably related to the use of process water sourced from the Penge Shaft since the nature of the ore and mine residue deposits is chemically unreactive or inert. The pathway for pollution is either from leaching of the process water storage facilities such as the PCD or from process water spillages.



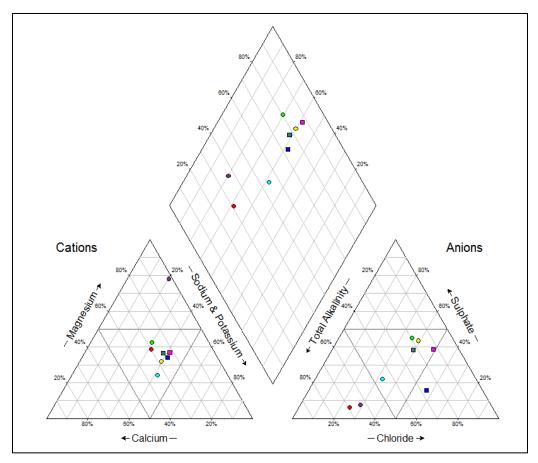


Figure 7: Piper diagram indicating the relative distribution of major cations and anions

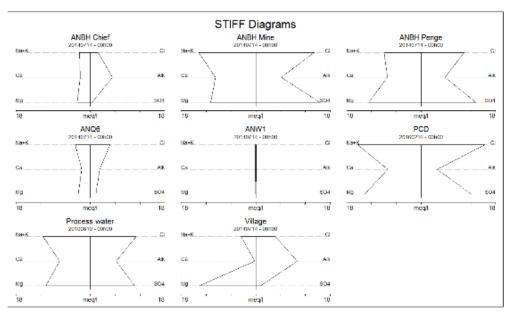


Figure 8: Stiff diagrams indicating the relative distribution of major cations and anions



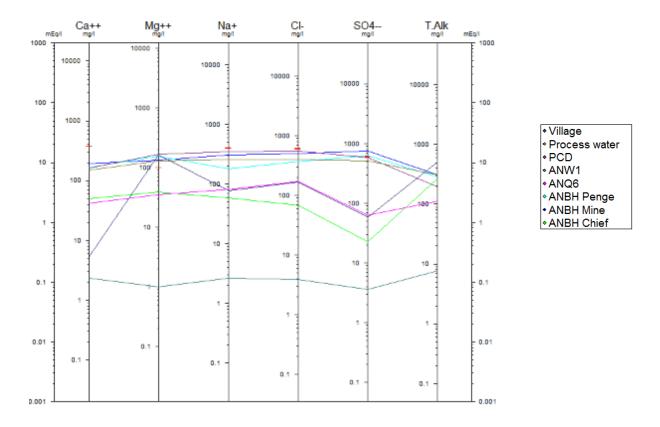


Figure 9: Schoeller diagram indicating the relative distribution of major cations and anions

### 9.9. Conceptual model

In a typical geohydrological setting, groundwater flow and aquifer development are closely linked to the geology of an area, which is no different for the aquifers underlying Annesley Andalusite Mine.

The area under investigation is underlain by the Timeball Hill Formation that forms part of the Pretoria Group and mainly comprises of andesitic lava, shale and quartzite. Sills and dykes do occur widespread within the study area and groundwater occurrence generally favours these contact zones between intrusive diabase sheets/dykes and the host shale. These contact zones would usually act as targets for groundwater exploration as they may create preferential flow pathways for the movement of groundwater. However, a study by Aurecon (2010) revealed that that little/no favourable groundwater was intercepted on the contact zones between shales and diabase/dolerite dykes. It is expected that contact between the diabase and shale, where fracturing usually takes place and where preferential flow paths may exist, may have been metamorphosed with no distinct contact and consequently little fracturing. In addition, very small volumes of groundwater seepage into the mining pits occur. This emphasizes the impervious nature of the rock and an assumption can be made that groundwater flow in the occurring aquifers will be very slow. However,



groundwater quality data suggest that the on-mine borehole is of poor quality displaying similar signatures to the upgradient PCD (emergency dam) and process water, and seepage is therefore expected to occur from the dam/s. The ore and mine residue deposits are chemically inert, and therefore the abstraction and use of process water from the old Penge Shaft is believed to be the major contributor to the substandard water quality measured.

Based on hydrocensus information, it can be concluded that aquifer system in the study area is classified as a "Minor Aquifer System". The local population are not solely dependent on groundwater and borehole yields are generally low.

A geochemical study on waste material and mine residue conducted by Shangoni Management Services in 2014 (Shangoni, 2014) revealed that the ore and the waste material generated on site are chemically inert. The leachate tests revealed that none of the parameters exceeded the SANS guideline, is overall of good quality and of fairly low chemical reactivity. A 1:4 (solid:leachate) ratio was used in the extraction tests and although this is unlikely to be replicated *in-situ*, it is sometimes regarded as a more representative ratio to use compared to the general 1:20.

### 10 Air quality

Management Programme

Information for this section was extracted from the "Air Quality Impact Assessment" (Shangoni Management Services, 2018):

The proposed remining project will involve material handling by excavators and front-end loaders, hauling, material transfer, conveying, crushing, screening and dumping. These remining activities have the potential to become major sources of dust and fine particulates (PM10 and PM2.5) and to lesser extent combustion emissions from vehicles and mobile equipment. This air quality impact assessment, therefore, focused on the emissions of dust and fine particulates (particularly PM10) and considered the combustion emissions qualitatively.

### 10.1 Remining Air Pollutants

The proposed remining project will involve material handling by excavators and front-end loaders, hauling, material transfer, conveying, crushing, screening and dumping. These remining activities are major sources of dust and fine particulates (PM10 and PM2.5) and to lesser extent other criteria pollutants from vehicle and mobile equipment.



#### 10.2 Effects of Air Pollutants

#### 10.2.1 Dust

Total Suspended Particulates (TSP) constitutes the fraction of atmospheric dust less than or equal to 75µm in aerodynamic diameter. The aerodynamic diameter is the diameter of a spherical particle that has a density of 1g/cm3 and which has the same terminal settling velocity as the particle of interest. TSP is used to estimate dustfall rates (mg/m2/day) and to evaluate the risk of nuisance posed by the dustfall.

### 10.2.2 Particulate Matter

PM10 and PM2.5 constitutes the atmospheric dust where the aerodynamic d50 diameter is 10µm and 2.5µm, respectively. In a sample of dust, the d50 diameter is the diameter above which fifty percent of the particles are larger, and below which fifty percent of the particles are smaller. PM10 and PM2.5 can harm to the human respiratory- and cardiovascular system and depending on the chemical composition of the small particles, they can also damage plants and contribute to acid rain.

### 10.2.3 Other criteria pollutants

#### 10.2.3.1 Sulphur dioxide (SO2)

Power plants and industries are the largest contributors of SO2 in the atmosphere. Other smaller anthropogenic sources of SO2 include vehicles and heavy equipment that burn fuel with a high sulphur content. The effects of SO2 include:

- Harm to the human respiratory system;
- The formation of secondary atmospheric particulates- adding to the particulate matter pollution in an area;
- Damage to plants and decreasing their growth (at high concentrations of SO2); and
- The formation of acid rain which can harm sensitive ecosystems.

# 10.2.3.2 Oxides of Nitrogen (NOx)

Power plants, kilns, vehicles and other machinery that combust fossil fuels are major sources of NOx. The effects of NOx include:

- Harm to the human respiratory system;
- The formation of secondary atmospheric particulates- adding to the particulate matter pollution in an area;
- The formation of ozone; and
- The formation of acid rain which can harm sensitive ecosystems.



### 10.2.3.3 Carbon Monoxide (CO)

Management Programme

Vehicles and other machinery that combust fossil fuels are major sources of outdoor CO pollution. CO reduces the amount of oxygen transported in the blood and may, therefore, affect the human heart and brain.

### 10.2.3.4 Benzene

Sources of Benzene include the burning coal and oil, evaporation from fuel service stations, and vehicle exhaust emissions. Benzene is carcinogenic and can cause disorders affecting human blood.

#### 10.2.3.5 Lead

Lead is released from industrial sources (mining, smelting, and refining activities) and vehicles. It can affect almost every organ and system in the human body. The effects of lead include:

- Cardiovascular effects, increased blood pressure and incidence of hypertension;
- Decreased kidney function;
- Reproductive problems (in both men and women); and
- Behaviour and learning problems, lower IQ and hyperactivity, slowed growth, hearing issues and anemia in children.

### 10.3 Emission Inventory

An emission inventory is a database of emission sources, and their contribution to the amount of pollution entering the atmosphere within a given time and geographic boundary. The development of a complete emission inventory is an important step in air quality management as it not only identifies emission sources but can aid in establishing emission trends over time and identifies areas that require mitigation.

Different methods for calculating an emission inventory depend on the availability of data, time, staff and finances and include, but are not limited to:

- Continuous monitoring to measure actual emissions;
- Extrapolating of short term emissions tests results;
- Mass balance;
- Engineering calculations; and
- The combination of published emission factors.

The emission inventory for the proposed remining project was developed using default emission factors for TSP and PM10. These default emission factors were taken from the Australian Government's National Pollutant Inventory Emission Estimation Technique Manual for Mining and Processing of Non-Metallic 1999 (Refer to Table 23 below).



The emission inventory was set up to assess a routine operational day for a remining scenario at each of the two sites:

- Remining at Segorong simulates the dust and PM10 where the remined material (waste rock and/or tailings) is hauled from Segorong to Annesley's crushing and screening plant; and
- Remining at Havercroft simulates the dust and PM10 where the remined material (waste rock and/or slimes) is hauled from Havercroft to Annesley's crushing and screening plant.

The emission inventory found hauling and crushing to be the most significant sources of dust and PM10. Refer to Figure 10 below for source apportionment.

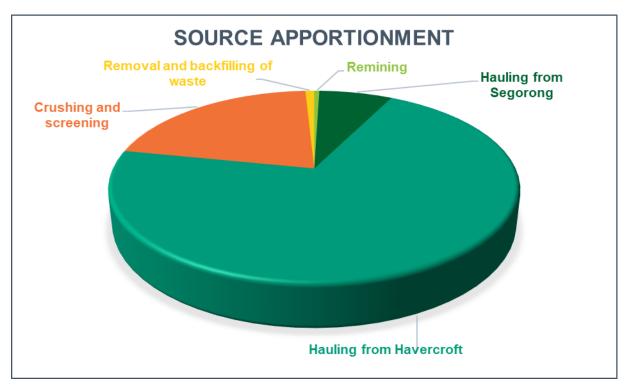


Figure 10: Source apportionment.

Table 23: Emission Inventory

Source	Activity	TS	Uni	PM1	Uni	Activi	Unit	TSP	PM1
		Р	t	0	t	ty		(g/s)	0
		EF		EF		data			(g/s)
Remining	Material handling by excavators	0.0	kg/t	0.01	kg/t	61	tonn	0.02	0.01
	& front-end loaders (waste	25	onn	2	onn		e/da		
	rock)		е		е		У		



Source	Activity	TS	Uni	PM1	Uni	Activi	Unit	TSP	PM1
		Р	t	0	t	ty		(g/s)	0
		EF		EF		data			(g/s)
	Material handling by excavators	0.0	kg/t	0.01	kg/t	61	tonn	0.02	0.01
	& front-end loaders (slimes)	25	onn	2	onn		e/da		
			е		е		у		
	Material handling by excavators	0.0	kg/t	0.01	kg/t	61	tonn	0.02	0.01
	& front-end loaders (tailings)	25	onn	2	onn		e/da		
			е		е		У		
Hauling and	Hauling at Segorong	4.2	kg/	1.25	kg/	5	VKT	0.25	0.07
delivery of material		3	VK		VK		/day		
			Т		Т				
	Hauling from Havercroft	4.2	kg/	1.25	kg/	53	VKT	2.59	0.76
		3	VK		VK		/day		
			Т		Т				
Unloading &	Trucks (dumping material)	0.0	kg/t	0.00	kg/t	61	tonn	0.01	0.00
material handling		12	onn	43	onn		e/da		
at Plant			е		е		У		
	Handling, transferring and	0.0	kg/t	0.03	kg/t	61	tonn	0.04	0.02
	conveying at Plant	6	onn		onn		e/da		
			е		е		У		
Plant	Primary crushing	0.2	kg/t	0.02	kg/t	61	tonn	0.14	0.01
			onn		onn		e/da		
			е		е		У		
	Secondary crushing	0.6	kg/t	0.06	kg/t	61	tonn	0.42	0.04
			onn		onn		e/da		
			е		е		У		
	Screen 1	0.0	kg/t	0.06	kg/t	61	tonn	0.06	0.04
		8	onn		onn		e/da		
			е		е		У		
	Screen 2	0.0	kg/t	0.06	kg/t	61	tonn	0.06	0.04
		8	onn		onn		e/da		
			е		е		У		
Handling of waste	Handling, transferring and	0.0	kg/t	0.03	kg/t	58	tonn	0.04	0.02
	conveying at Plant	6	onn		onn		e/da		
			е		е		У		



Source	Activity	TS	Uni	PM1	Uni	Activi	Unit	TSP	PM1
		Р	t	0	t	ty		(g/s)	0
		EF		EF		data			(g/s)
Removal of waste	Hauling waste rock to plant	4.2	kg/	1.25	kg/	0	VKT	0.02	0.01
with trucks		3	VK		VK		/day		
			Т		Т				
Backfilling of	Trucks (dumping waste)	0.0	kg/t	0.00	kg/t	58	tonn	0.01	0.00
waste		12	onn	43	onn		e/da		
			е		е		У		

# 10.4 Dispersion Model

### 10.4.1 Setup

For this assessment a tier two gaussian-plume dispersion model, AERMODview, was used. AERMODview makes use of a terrain pre-processor (AERMAP) and a meteorological pre-processor (AERMETview). Pre-processed MM5 meteorological data was used in the setup of AERMETview.

AERMETview's land use creator tool was used to create a Land Use File using different Land Use Code Selections based on the United states 1992 National Land Cover Data ("NLCD92"). Once the Land Use File was created, the number and period of the different surface sectors were selected and processed by AERMETview's AERSURFACE Utility. This utility generates the albedo, Bowen ratio and surface roughness of the area.

The model domains in AERMODview, for both Havercroft and Segorong, were setup for a distance of 10 km from the centre of the respective sites and plotted on a Cartesian receptor grid matrix with a spacing of 100m. The Universal Transverse Mercator ("UTM") coordinate system (horizontal datum: World Geodetic System 84, WGS-84 system) was used for the model domain base map. The terrain data used in AERMODview was obtained from the Shuttle Radar Topography Mission (SRTM1, version 3, 30 m resolution).

Refer to below for the model source parameters.

Table 24: Model source parameters

Source	Parameters
Remining	Volume source
	Height – 3 m



Source	Parameters
	Area – Approximately 8000 m <sup>2</sup>
	Working hours: 24 hours, 365 days per year.
Crushing	Volume source
	Height – 2 m
	Area – 7500 m <sup>2</sup>
	Working hours: 13 hours/day, 365 days per year.
Hauling	Line source
	Vehicle height – 3.75 m
	Vehicle width – 3.5 m
	Length of haul road – Approximately 13 km.
	Working hours: 24 hours, 365 days per year.

# 10.4.2 Results

Management Programme

The emissions from the two scenarios were simulated and compared to the National Ambient Air Quality Standards (NAAQS) and the National Dust Control Regulations (NDCR) standards. The evaluation found the following for both remining at Segorong and remining at Havercroft:

- The projected average daily PM10 concentrations exceed the average daily NAAQS (75 µg/m3) for PM10 in proximity to the crushing and screening plant (Refer to Figure 11 and Figure 14);
- The projected annual average PM10 concentrations fall below the annual average NAAQS (40 µg/m3) for PM10 (Refer to Figure 12 and Figure 15);
- The projected average daily dustfall rates exceed the NDCR standard for non-residential areas (1200 mg/m2/day) in proximity to the crushing and screening plant (Refer to Figure 13 and Figure 16).



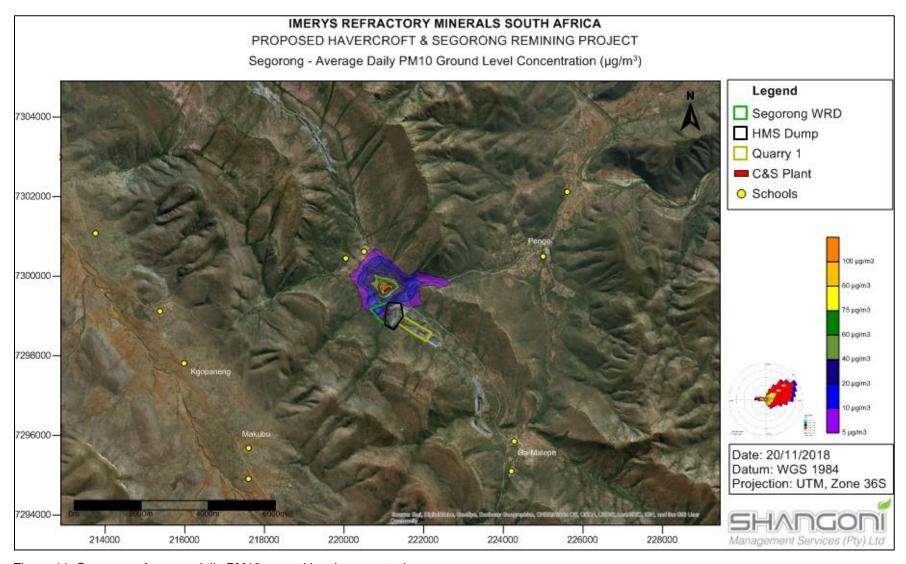


Figure 11: Segorong: Average daily PM10 ground level concentration.



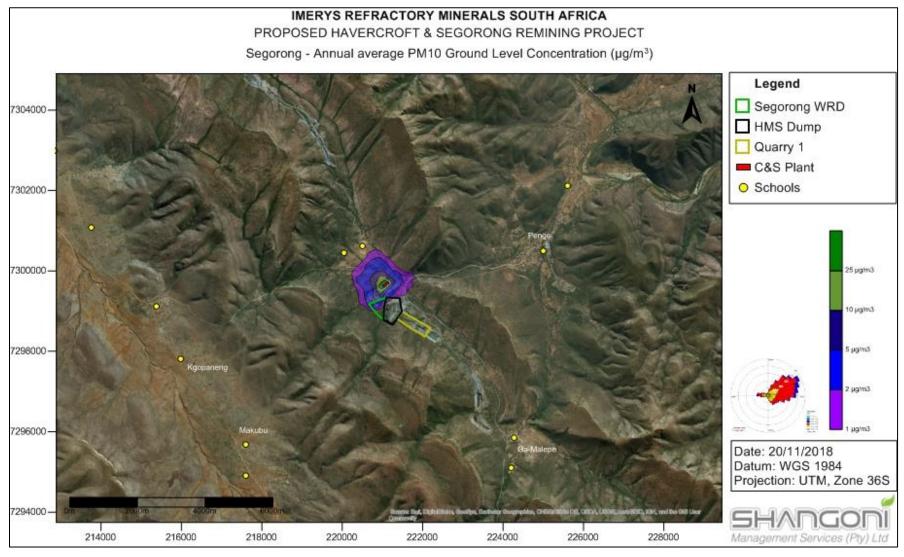


Figure 12: Segorong: Annual average PM10 ground level concentration.



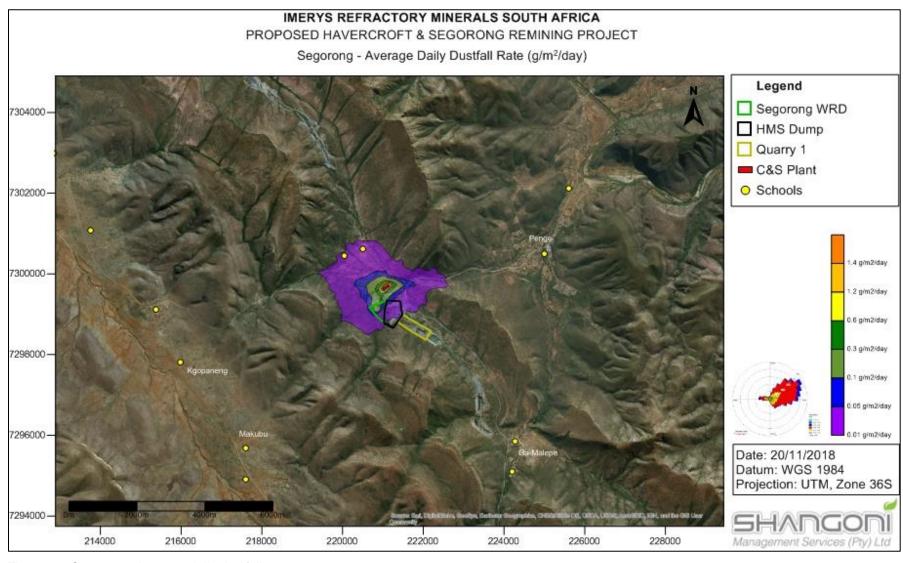


Figure 13: Segorong: Average daily dustfall rate.



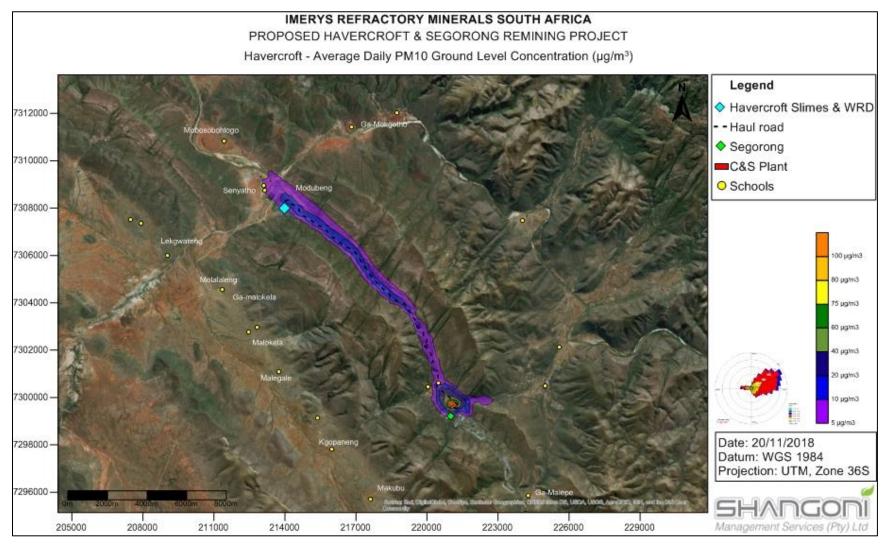


Figure 14: Havercroft: Average daily PM10 ground level concentration.



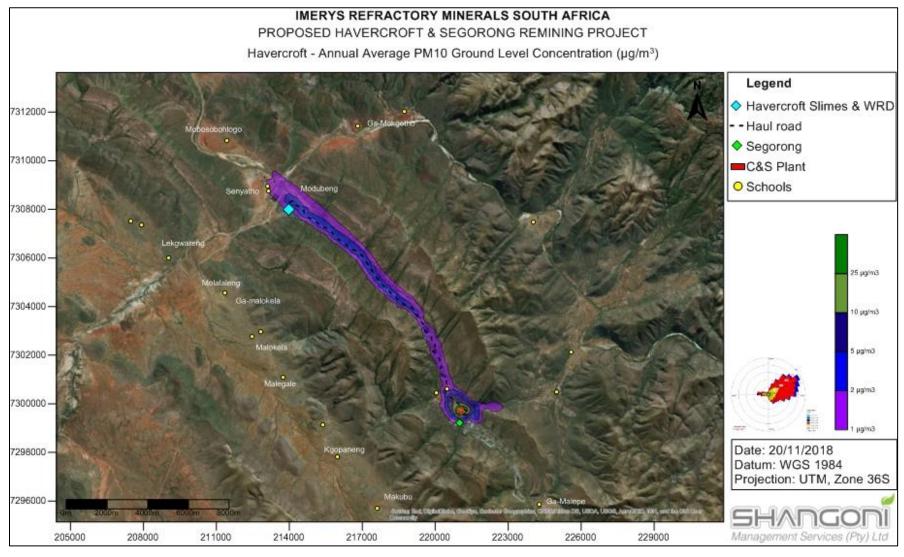


Figure 15: Havercroft: Annual average PM10 ground level concentration.



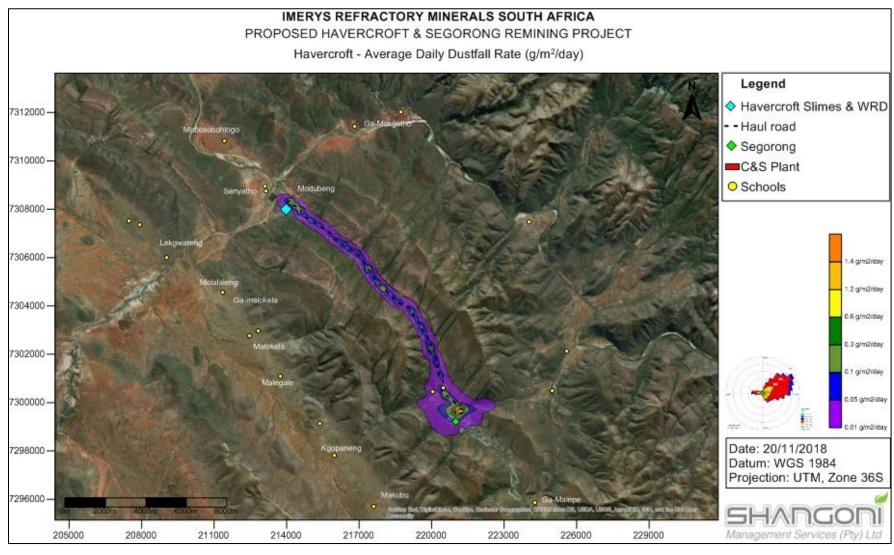


Figure 16: Havercroft: Average daily dustfall rate.



Management Programme

The main conclusion of the air quality impact assessment is that the proposed remining project is likely to result in high to moderate impacts without mitigation. Its anticipated that the application of the mitigation measures as per section 4 will reduce the significance of the impacts to moderate and low.

It is Shangoni's opinion that the proposed remining project may continue if the applicant commits to implementing the mitigation measures recommended in section 4 of this report. These mitigation measures should be improved on, should dustfall- or any ambient air quality monitoring results during the construction, operational and/or the closure phase show exceedances of dustfall or the ambient air quality standards.

#### 11 Environmental noise

Information for this section was extracted from the 'Approved EMP (nd, nd):

No baseline values were determined as the area is classified as rural and the statutory requirement for such areas is known to be 45dB. The only source of noise beyond the boundaries of the mine is expected to be low volume traffic noise from public roads.

## 12 Visual aspects

There is no specialist study done for visual aspects. The comment below is based on assumptions made during site visits.

Annesley Mine Operation is only visible from the Penge access road, adjacent to the mine. Annesley Andalusite Mine (Havercroft Operation) is visible from the scattered residential areas of the local inhabitants and from the access roads.

### 13 Cultural and heritage resources

Information for this section was extracted from the Approved EMP (Shangoni Management Services, 2006), and the EMP PAR (BECS Environmental, 2015):

Malepe Tribal Authority grave sites are situated in the proposed mining area. According to the Cultural Resources Survey done by the National Cultural History Museum in August 2001 there are a total of 353 graves. These graves are not yet removed.

Some tools dating to the Early and Middle Stone Age were found within the boundaries of Segorong village but are of low archaeological significance.

No archaeological site dating to the Iron Age was identified in the area of the mining area.



### 14 Sensitive landscapes

The proposed activities are as follow:

- The remining of the Havercroft Operation slimes dam and waste rock dump, located on the farm Havercroft 99 KT.
- The remining of the Segorong waste rock dump and HMS waste rock dump, located on the farm Annesley 109 KT
- The remining of backfilled tailings in Quarry 1, located on farm Annesley 109 KT.
- The extension of the mining right area to include the Penge Shaft and associated tanks on the farm Penge 108 KT (no environmental authorisation necessary for this step).

There were no specialist studies conducted for the development as the mine is an already existing mine and the same environmental context applies. The only activity to be considered for this application is the remining of already existing mine residue. No new areas will be disturbed.

Three upper tributaries of the Segorong River pass through the farm Annesley 109 KT where the remining of the Segorong waste rock dump and HMS waste rock dump occurs. There is a wetland present on this site. With exception of the topographic location of the systems, the wetland indicators necessary for the classification as wetlands were not observed on site. The wetland found within the extended study area can be considered to be of moderate ecological management class. The REMC was calculated to be in Low/ Marginal condition "Aquatic ecosystems that is not ecologically important and sensitive at any scale. The biodiversity of these floodplains is ubiquitous and not sensitive to flow and habitat modifications. They play an insignificant role in moderating the quantity and quality of water of major rivers". The Ephemeral hydrology of the system combined with the impact of the open cast mining somewhat isolates the system from the larger hydrological drainage network.

The 353 graves (Approved EMP, Shangoni Management Services, 2006) were never removed and are still sensitive resources on the area.

Havercroft Operation falls within the Sekhukhune Norite Bushveld which is an endangered threatened ecosystem. The area surrounding the quarries are classified as Critical Biodiversity Area 1.

### 15 Regional socio-economic aspects

Information for this section was extracted from the IWWMP (Shangoni Management Services, 2012):



The mining site is situated within the SDM and GTLM. The statistics indicated in the table below was collected for the Integrated Development Plan and is valid for 2017-2018.

Table 25: Households in the district

Municipalities	Populat	ion		Number	of house	eholds	Average household size			
	1996	2001	2011	1996	2001	2011	1996	2001	2011	
Ephraim Mogale	97 597	115	115	19 666	24 189	32 284	5,0	4,8	3,8	
		682	682							
Elias Motsoaledi	218	213	213	42 641	45 478	60 251	5,1	4,7	4,1	
	622	218	218							
Makhuduthamaga	266	258	258	49 789	52 978	65 217	5,4	4,9	4,2	
	845	246	246							
Fetakgomo	96 945	91 589	91 589	17 376	18 883	22 851	5,6	4,9	4,1	
Greater Tubatse	227	264	264	42 427	53 756	83 199	5,4	4,9	4,0	
	127	258	258							
Sekhukhune	907	942	1076	171	195	263	5,3	4,8	4,1	
	137	993	840	908	285	802				

Source: Census (2011)

Since 1996, the number of households in the district has been on an upward trend. In 2011, there are 263 802 households in the district. The average household size is 4.1 in 2011 and was 5,3 in 1996. This means that the extended family set up is beginning to change on a daily basis with modern life styles. The provincial household average size is 3.8 which mean Sekhukhune household average size is still relatively high by comparison.

Table 26: Gender Profile: Males and Females

Municipality	2011		2016	
	Males	Females	Males	Females
Fetakgomo/ Greater	202 656	227 814	238 458	251 923
Tubatse				
Makhuduthamaga	121 282	153 075	124 963	158 993
Ephraim Mogale	58 207	65 442	59 908	67 260
Elias Motsoaledi	115 503	133 860	125 133	143 123
Sekhukhune	497 648	579 191	548 463	621 299

Source: Census (2011), Community Survey (2016)



Since 1996, sex ratios have not changed much. In 2011, there are 497 428 males compared to 579 191 females. The imbalance can be attributed to large numbers of males who migrate to other provinces to look for work opportunities. As a result of the rural nature of the district of Sekhukhune, there are still persons who work in other provinces such as Gauteng and only come back home monthly or bi-monthly to see their families. This scenario also tells a picture that there might high presence of female headed households in the district.

The implication for the district is that there is a need to develop programmes that target women in particular to create self-employment and educational opportunities where possible.

Table 27: Population growth by race

Race	1996	2001	2011
Africans	898 129	958 594	1 061 550
Coloured	579	727	1 232
Indian/Asian	377	508	1 721
Whites	8 876	7 356	11 015

Source: Census (2011)

The figure below indicates that 99% of the population in Sekhukhune District Municipality is made up of Africans. The remainder 1% comprises Whites, Indians and Coloureds. It is not a surprising trend because a large part of Sekhukhune District Municipality comprises villages under tribal authorities. The 1% of the Whites, Indians and Coloureds are confined to the main towns in the district and mining areas.

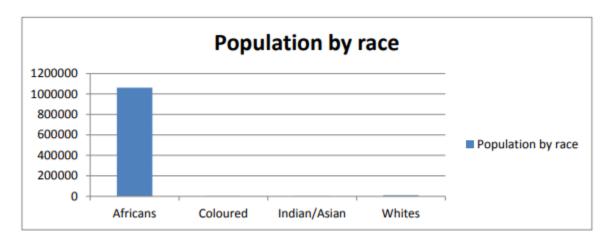


Figure 17: Population by race



Table 28: Age profile

Management Programme

Municipality	Age group	Total
Fetakgomo/Greater	0-14	149 186
Tubatse (LIM476)	15-64	255 695
	65+	24 590

Source (Census 2011)

The male-female ratios are almost equal in the age group below 18 years, but females are almost 60% of the population in the working age group and more than 68% in the senior age group for the Sekhukhune district as a whole. It is obvious then that a significant number of Sekhukhune males have alternative residence away from the district

## 15.1 Major economic activities and sources of employment

- Annesley Andalusite Mine;
- Local shops;
- Schools and
- Farmers in the Burgersfort/Steelpoort areas.

#### 15.2 Unemployment estimate for the region

There has been a rapid improvement in the household income distribution profile in Limpopo during the past ten years, mainly as a result of social grants. Households living in poverty, with annual incomes ranging from 0 to R19.600 per year, shrank as a proportion of total households from 86% in 2001 to 56.5% in 2011. This group is unable to afford any contribution towards the cost of municipal services. The corresponding proportion of households in this income group for Limpopo Province in 2011 was 55.6%, which is only slightly better than the situation in Sekhukhune District.

The intermediate group, with incomes ranging from R19.601 per year to R153.800 per year, used to comprise 13% of all households in 2011, but has increased to 38%. This group can afford to make meaningful contributions to the cost of municipal services. The high-income group, who can afford to pay the full cost of municipal services, has increased from less than 1% of all households in 2011, to 5.5% in 2011. The income distribution profile is unlikely to keep improving at the same pace as the last ten years, because the social grant programme is already fully taken up. Further improvements will depend on new job creation (GSA 2014).

The SDM like any other District in South Africa is experiencing a decline in formal job opportunities because of the general global economic meltdown. This has led to an escalating unemployment particularly among



the economically active population of 18 years and above. Unemployment rate has encouraged the fast growth of informal sector in the district.

Table 29: Household Income Distribution for Sekhukhune District: 2001 and 2011

Income Group	2001	2011	2001 (%)	2011(%)
No income	80 525	38 450	39.3	14.58
R 1 - R 4800	19 985	17 064	9.76	6.47
R 4801 - R 9600	50 857	32 375	24.8	12.28
R 9601 - R 19 600	25 954	61 827	12.6	23.44
R 19 601 - R 38 200	14 580	56 078	7.12	21.26
R 38 201 - R 76 400	9 307	27 100	4.55	10.28
R 76 401 - R 153 800	3 765	16 313	1.84	6.19
R 153 801 - R 307	1 082	9 454	0.53	3.58
600				
R 307 601 - R 614	286	3 748	0.14	1.42
400				
R 614 001 - R 1 228	113	720	0.06	0.27
800				
R 1 228 801 - R 2	171	333	0.08	0.13
457 600				
R 2 457 601 or more	81	274	0.04	0.10
Total	204 706	263 737	100.00	100.00

Source: Statistics South Africa (Census 2001 and 2011)

# 15.3 Housing demand, and availability

The mine is in the Malepe Tribal Area and land allocation is informal. The land is administrated as communal land where small plots are allocated on a "Permission to Occupy" (PTO) basis. A number of formal townships have been established in the region, or is in the construction phase, and stands are readily available.

# 15.4 Social infrastructure - schools, hospitals, sporting and recreating facilities, shops, police, civil administration

- Churches at Segorong: 4 churches namely; Baptist Church, Segorong RCC, Apostolic Church, St Engenas ZCC.
- Schools in Segorong: Segorong Primary School: (260 pupils, 8 teachers) and Madikoloshe
   Secondary School (126 pupils, 9 teachers); Sekhukhune District Municipality has 263 000 households. This means there is a need for 263 secondary schools and 526 primary schools. There



exists 536 primary schools and the need is 526 compared to existing 327 secondary schools where the need is 263 secondary schools. Although the average scenario indicates that enough schools have been provided, there is still a challenge due to long walking distances to these educational facilities.

- Businesses in Segorong: Magana Gokatwa (bottle store, not in use), Hygienic Butchery (not in use), Matikwene Eating house (active), Majestic Café, Super Saving Store (active);
- Health Services: Hospital at Penge;
- Recreation Facilities: None;
- Police: Burgersfort;
- Civil Administration: The authority in the area is the Malepe Tribal Authority and is in the jurisdiction of the SDM. The Administrative Centre is at Praktiseer, some 24km to the south.

### 15.5 Bulk services

There are no Gross Geographic Product (GGP) estimates available for SDM, in which the Annesley Andalusite Mine – Segorong Project resides, since the demarcation was done in December 2000. The closest proxy is to consider sectoral employment. However, there is not a strict correlation between employment and GGP, because a sector such as agriculture has a considerably higher employment coefficient than a sector such as mining, which is more capital intensive. Sectoral employment figures for SDM are reflected below, because these are the best available at present.

Table 30: Socio-Economic statistics for the area

Sector	Employment number
Agriculture, hunting; forestry and fishing	11357
Mining and quarrying	5618
Manufacturing	3315
Electricity; gas and water supply	707
Construction	3299
Wholesale and retail trade	9180
Transport; storage and communication	2668
Financial, insurance, real estate and business services	2736
Community, social and personal services	17250
Other and not adequately defined	6
Private Households	7642
Undetermined	6844
Total	70622



Management Programme

Community services, which are mostly government, is the largest employer by far, accounting for 25% of employment. It is probably also the largest contributor to GGP. It is evident that government is far more dominant in the Limpopo portion of SDM than in Mpumalanga.

The second biggest employer is agriculture and hunting, with 16% of total employment. In this case, Mpumalanga is the dominant contributor. Trading activities are in third place (13%) and this time the relative contributions from Limpopo and Mpumalanga are more balance, but with Limpopo ahead. This is a reflection of the larger number of people living in the Limpopo part of SDM.

Private household activities are in fourth place at 11%. This time Mpumalanga is well ahead, reflecting the domestic work opportunities that are available at Groblersdal, Marble Hall and Burgersfort. Mining is only the fifth largest employer, but probably the largest or second largest contributor to GGP. Limpopo, with its platinum mines in Tubatse and Fetakgomo, is the dominant area.

All the other sectors, including manufacturing and construction, are relatively small, accounting for less than five percent of total employment each. In-migration is likely to be less than 3000 of the total employment of almost 71,000, which is less than 5%. However, in addition to the total number of locally employed persons, there are probably at least 42,000 men who have families in SDM, but who work elsewhere.

### 16 Ecosystem Services

The following information was extracted from Walter et al (2005):

## 16.1 Provisioning services

These are the products obtained from ecosystems, including:

- 1. Food. This includes the vast range of food products derived from plants, animals, and microbes.
  - No food products are associated with the area of the proposed project.
- 2. Fiber. Materials included here are wood, jute, cotton, hemp, silk, and wool.
  - No fibre products are associated with the area of the proposed project.
- 3. Fuel. Wood, dung, and other biological materials serve as sources of energy.
  - No fuel products are associated with the area of the proposed project.
- 4. Genetic resources. This includes the genes and genetic information used for animal and plant breeding and biotechnology.
  - No genetic resources are associated with the area of the proposed project.



- 5. Biochemicals, natural medicines, and pharmaceuticals. Many medicines, biocides, food additives such as alginates, and biological materials are derived from ecosystems.
  - No biochemicals, natural medicines, and pharmaceuticals are associated with the area of the proposed project.
- 6. Ornamental resources. Animal and plant products, such as skins, shells, and flowers, are used as ornaments, and whole plants are used for landscaping and ornaments.
  - No ornamental resources are associated with the area of the proposed project.
- 7. Fresh water. People obtain fresh water from ecosystems and thus the supply of fresh water can be considered a provisioning service. Fresh water in rivers is also a source of energy. Because water is required for other life to exist, however, it could also be considered a supporting service.
  - Refer to Part A(g)(iv)(6.1) for the river diversion as part of the project. The impacts associated with this river diversion is also included in Part A(g)(v)(1.4).

## 16.2 Regulating services

These are the benefits obtained from the regulation of ecosystem processes, including:

- 1. Air quality regulation. Ecosystems both contribute chemicals to and extract chemicals from the atmosphere, influencing many aspects of air quality.
  - No air quality regulation will be influenced by the proposed project.
- 2. Climate regulation. Ecosystems influence climate both locally and globally. At a local scale, for example, changes in land cover can affect both temperature and precipitation. At the global scale, ecosystems play an important role in climate by either sequestering or emitting greenhouse gases.
  - The land cover in the area has already been changed for mining. No additional land cover will be changed for the proposed project.
- 3. Water regulation. The timing and magnitude of runoff, flooding, and aquifer recharge can be strongly influenced by changes in land cover, including, in particular, alterations that change the water storage potential of the system, such as the conversion of wetlands or the replacement of forests with croplands or croplands with urban areas.
  - Refer to Part A(g)(iv)(6.1) for the river diversion as part of the project. The impacts associated with this river diversion is also included in Part A(g)(v)(1.4).
  - The mine is currently applying for a water use licence for the diversion of the tributary.



Management Programme

- 4. Erosion regulation. Vegetative cover plays an important role in soil retention and the prevention of landslides.
  - No additional vegetation cover will be lost.
- 5. Water purification and waste treatment. Ecosystems can be a source of impurities (for instance, in fresh water) but also can help filter out and decompose organic wastes introduced into inland waters and coastal and marine ecosystems and can assimilate and detoxify compounds through soil and subsoil processes.
  - Refer to Part A(g)(v) for a description of the impact of backfilling with waste on the environment.
- 6. Disease regulation. Changes in ecosystems can directly change the abundance of human pathogens, such as cholera, and can alter the abundance of disease vectors, such as mosquitoes.
  - No disease regulation will be influenced by the proposed project.
- 7. Pest regulation. Ecosystem changes affect the prevalence of crop and livestock pests and diseases.
  - No pest regulation will be influenced by the proposed project.
- 8. Pollination. Ecosystem changes affect the distribution, abundance, and effectiveness of pollinators.
  - No pollination will be influenced by the proposed project.
- 9. Natural hazard regulation. The presence of coastal ecosystems such as mangroves and coral reefs can reduce the damage caused by hurricanes or large waves.
  - This is not applicable for this project.

### 16.3 Cultural services

These are the nonmaterial benefits people obtain from ecosystems through spiritual enrichment, cognitive development, reflection, recreation, and aesthetic experiences, including:

- 1. Cultural diversity. The diversity of ecosystems is one factor influencing the diversity of cultures.
- 2. Spiritual and religious values. Many religions attach spiritual and religious values to ecosystems or their components.
- 3. Knowledge systems (traditional and formal). Ecosystems influence the types of knowledge systems developed by different cultures.



- 4. Educational values. Ecosystems and their components and processes provide the basis for both formal and informal education in many societies.
- 5. Inspiration. Ecosystems provide a rich source of inspiration for art, folklore, national symbols, architecture, and advertising.
- 6. Aesthetic values. Many people find beauty or aesthetic value in various aspects of ecosystems, as reflected in the support for parks, scenic drives, and the selection of housing locations.
- 7. Social relations. Ecosystems influence the types of social relations that are established in particular cultures. Fishing societies, for example, differ in many respects in their social relations from nomadic herding or agricultural societies.
- 8. Sense of place. Many people value the "sense of place" that is associated with recognized features of their environment, including aspects of the ecosystem.
- 9. Cultural heritage values. Many societies place high value on the maintenance of either historically important landscapes ("cultural landscapes") or culturally significant species.
- 10. Recreation and ecotourism. People often choose where to spend their leisure time based in part on the characteristics of the natural or cultivated landscapes in a particular area.
  - The proposed project is on an already existing mining area. A heritage study was conducted for the mine. No such ecosystems are deemed to exist on the area which form part of the proposed project.

## 16.4 Supporting services

Supporting services are those that are necessary for the production of all other ecosystem services. They differ from provisioning, regulating, and cultural services in that their impacts on people are often indirect or occur over a very long time, whereas changes in the other categories have relatively direct and short-term impacts on people. (Some services, like erosion regulation, can be categorized as both a supporting and a regulating service, depending on the time scale and immediacy of their impact on people.) These services include:

1. Soil Formation. Because many provisioning services depend on soil fertility, the rate of soil formation influences human well-being in many ways.



- 2. Photosynthesis. Photosynthesis produces oxygen necessary for most living organisms.
- 3. Primary production. The assimilation or accumulation of energy and nutrients by organisms.
- 4. Nutrient cycling. Approximately 20 nutrients essential for life, including nitrogen and phosphorus, cycle through ecosystems and are maintained at different concentrations in different parts of ecosystems.
- 5. Water cycling. Water cycles through ecosystems and is essential for living organisms.
  - The proposed project includes two already existing quarries. No supporting services can be associated with these quarries.
  - The settling point will be constructed on an already disturbed area; therefore, no supporting services can be associated with this area.

The river diversion is the only area that can be associated with supporting services. Adequate management as per this EIA/EMP will prevent loss of these services.



# v) Impacts and risks identified including the nature, significance, consequence, extent, duration and probability of the impacts, including the degree to which these impacts

The impact assessment and management measures are only based on the remining activities, and the transportation of the residue to the plant for re-mining. The impacts and management associated with the plant activities as well as the disposal of the final mine residue after processing, form part of the mine-wide EMP as well as the EIAR submitted for the backfilling of Quarries 6 & 7.

## 1 Geology and the mineral resource

There will be no impact on the geology.

## 2 Topography including drainage patterns and visual aspects

## 2.1 Restoration of topography

Activity: Sloping and remining of the slimes dam, waste rock dumps and the pits.

<u>Aspect and impact description:</u> The topography of the mine residue areas will be changed to a more natural topography. This will further also have a positive impact on the drainage patterns as well as the visual aspects. There will be no impact from the roads, as there are already existing roads from all areas to Annesley Plant. There will also be no impact from the pipelines as the pipelines will be on already existing routes.

Method for assessing risks: Havercroft Operation Annual Rehabilitation Plan (BECS Environmental, 2018). Refer to Part B(1)(d) for a complete discussion on rehabilitation and Part B(1)(h)(i) for a complete discussion on monitoring. Refer to Part A(d) for a detailed discussion on legal compliance and standards.

<u>Changes to previous EMP:</u> The impact and risk methodology have been updated to a new format. This EMP is for a new application, therefore changes of impact are not included.

CONSEQUENCE		
Nature / Intensity / Severity of Impact	Before management	With management
The impact on the topography will be <b>positive</b> . Topography is not a resource, however, other resources such as drainage patterns and visual aspects are affected.	4	5
Spatial extent of Impact	Before management	With management
Impact occurs on-site at the point where the pits and mine residue will be sloped.	1	1



Duration of Impact	Before management	With management
Once sloping is finished, this will remain as a permanent land pattern.	4	4
LIKELIHOOD		
Probability of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
The impact will occur regardless of any prevention measures	4	4
Frequency of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
This is a once-off impact.	1	1
SIGNIFICANCE	Before management	With management
The impact before and after mitigation will be a positive impact and will aid rehabilitation.	14	15

Further sloping and rehabilitation on Havercroft Operation is planned for the near future. The remining of the mine residue will therefore have a positive cumulative impact on the topography.

# **Environmental objective**

To ensure end land-use that has been achieved which is grazing and game farming.

Management measures	Phase	Management	Management	Monitoring	Responsibilities for	Financial provision	Mitigation
to be applied	applicable to	tools	timeframe and	programmes	implementation and	for long-term	hierarchy
	management		schedule		long-term	maintenance and/or	
	measure				maintenance	environmental	
						costs	
Sloping as per	Operational until	The rehabilitation	Correct sloping	Topographical	Mine surveyor and		Rehabilitation.
rehabilitation plan must be	closure.	plan for both	must be	reshaping.	mine manager.		
implemented. In short,		Annesley and	ongoing.				
sloping of most of the		Havercroft	Monitoring of				
material to the north in the		Operations.	sloping once				
direction of the tailings			after reshaping.				
facility and to the east							
towards the plant area.							
Stakahaldar aypaatatia	no and / ar samn	conto	I.	l		I	I

Stakeholder expectations and / or comments



None received.

#### Legal compliance and standards

Regulation 4 of GN 632 of 2015 under NEMWA (Regulations Regarding the Planning and Management of Mine Residue) under NEMWA. NEMA and the Environmental Conservation Act 73 of 1989 as amended (ECA)

#### Residual and latent risks

The sloping will lessen this residual impact. No additional latent impacts are envisaged.

## 3 Soils, land capability, surrounding land use and landscape character

#### 3.1 Pollution of soil due to use of road

Activity: Removal of all topsoil at the quarry footprint in order to mine the underlying geological strata

Aspect and impact description: Soil pollution from spillages of mine residue or hydrocarbons.

Method for assessing risks: General accepted standards and procedures on mine (BECS Environmental, 2015)

Changes to previous EMP: The impact and risk methodology have been updated to a new format. The impact on the soil will remain the same.

CONSEQUENCE		
Nature / Intensity / Severity of Impact	Before management	With management
The risks on soil pollution will not be severe and reversible. The resources are not sensitive.	1	1
Spatial extent of Impact	Before management	With management
The risk will be site specific	1	1
Duration of Impact	Before management	With management
Soil pollution will be temporary.	1	1
LIKELIHOOD		
Probability of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
Soil pollution impact will be probable without management measures.	2	1
Frequency of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
Soil pollution impact can occur weekly without proper management.	4	1
SIGNIFICANCE	Before management	With management
The impact before and after mitigation will be a low negative impact.	9	5



Farming, residential and mining activities in the area can lead to soil pollution.

# **Environmental objective**

To prevent soil pollution.

Management measures to	Phase applicable	Management tools	Monitoring	Management	Responsibilities	Financial	Mitigation
be applied	to management		programmes	timeframe and	for	provision for	hierarchy
	measure			schedule	implementation	long-term	
					and long-term	maintenance	
					maintenance	and/or	
						environmental	
						costs	
All vehicles and machinery	Operation and	Spill handling	Maintenance as per	As per schedule	Mine manager.		Minimise.
must be maintained to	decommissioning	procedure and	maintenance	of maintenance			
prevent soil pollution.	phase.	waste management	register.	register.			
		procedure.					
All pipelines must be	Operation and	Spill handling	Inspections of	Weekly basis.	Mine manager.		Minimise.
maintained to prevent	decommissioning	procedure and	routes for any				
spillages of mine residue.	phase.	waste management	pollution.				
		procedure.					
Any leakages or mine	Operation and	Spill handling	Inspections of	Weekly basis.	Mine manager.		Minimise.
residue spillages must be	decommissioning	procedure and	routes for any				
removed as hazardous	phase.	waste management	pollution.				
waste.		procedure.					

# Stakeholder expectations and / or comments

None received.

# Legal compliance and standards

Contaminated land: GN 527 of 2004 i.t.o. MPRDA, and sections 35-41 of NEMWA

### Residual and latent risks

No residual risks from soil pollution.



# 3.2 Change of land capability

Activity: Sloping and remining of the slimes dam, waste rock dumps and the pits.

Aspect and impact description: Changing land capability and land use back to non-mining.

Method for assessing risks: Havercroft Operation Annual Rehabilitation Plan (BECS Environmental, 2018). Refer to Part B(1)(d) for a complete discussion on rehabilitation and Part B(1)(h)(i) for a complete discussion on monitoring. Refer to Part A(d) for a detailed discussion on legal compliance and standards.

Changes to previous EMP: The impact and risk methodology have been updated to a new format. The impact on the soil will remain the same.

Nature / Intensity / Severity of Impact	Before management	With management
	•	with management
The impact on the land capability, surrounding land use and landscape character will be positive medium	0 4	5
high.		
Spatial extent of Impact	Before management	With management
The risk will be site specific.	1	1
Duration of Impact	Before management	With management
Once sloping is finished, this will remain as a permanent land pattern.	4	4
LIKELIHOOD		1
Probability of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
The impact will occur regardless of any other activity.	4	4
Frequency of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
This is a once-off impact.	1	1
SIGNIFICANCE	Before management	With management
The impact before and after mitigation will be a positive impact and will aid rehabilitation.	14	15

#### **Cumulative impacts**

Further sloping and rehabilitation on Havercroft Operation is planned for the near future. The remining of the mine residue will therefore have a positive cumulative impact on the land capability and land use.

#### **Environmental objective**

To ensure end land-use that has been achieved which is grazing and game farming.



Management measures to	Phase applicable	Management tools	Monitoring	Management	Responsibilities	Financial	Mitigation
be applied	to management		programmes	timeframe and	for	provision for	hierarchy
	measure			schedule	implementation	long-term	
					and long-term	maintenance	
					maintenance	and/or	
						environmental	
						costs	
All pipelines must be	Decommissioning	Rehabilitation plan.	Inspections of	Monthly until all	Mine manager		Rehabilitation.
removed.	phase.		pipeline routes.	pipes are			
				removed.			
The plant area and	Decommissioning	Rehabilitation plan.	Inspections of plant	Monthly until all	Mine manager		Rehabilitation.
associated infrastructure	phase.		and infrastructure	infrastructure is			
must be removed.			area.	removed.			
All unused roads must be	Decommissioning	Rehabilitation plan.	Inspection of road	Monthly until all	Mine manager		Rehabilitation.
removed.	phase.		routes.	roads are			
				removed.			
Sloping as per rehabilitation	Operational until	Rehabilitation plan.	Topographical	Correct sloping	Mine surveyor and		Rehabilitation.
plan must be implemented.	closure.		reshaping.	must be	mine manager.		
				ongoing.			
				Monitoring of			
				sloping once			
				after reshaping.			
Revegetation as per the	Operational until 5	Rehabilitation plan.	Vegetation	Revegetation	Mine manager.		Rehabilitation.
rehabilitation plan must be	years after closure.		monitoring.	and vegetation			
implemented. Mine residue				monitoring as			
characteristics with respect				per the			
to plant growth (soil quality)				rehabilitation			
to be done only if necessary.				plan. Mine			
				residue			
				characteristics			
				will be once-off			



				only if		
				necessary.		
Erosion to be removed if	Operational until 5	Rehabilitation plan.	Erosion monitoring.	Erosion removal	Mine manager.	Rehabilitation.
necessary.	years after closure.			as necessary.		
				Erosion		
				monitoring		
				monthly		
Overall clean-up of area.	Operational until 5	Rehabilitation plan	Surface water	Surface water	Mine manager.	Rehabilitation.
	years after closure.	and spill handling	quality monitoring;	quality		
		procedures if spills	groundwater quality	monitoring		
		occur.	monitoring; and	monthly;		
			monitoring of	groundwater		
			surface water	quality		
			drainage systems.	monitoring		
				quarterly; and		
				monitoring of		
				surface water		
				drainage		
				systems during		
				rainy seasons.		

None received.

Legal compliance and standards

GN 527 of 2004 i.t.o. MPRDA, and sections 35-41 of NEMWA

Residual and latent risks

The sloping will lessen this residual impact. No additional latent impacts are envisaged.

# 4 Vegetation and animal life

There will be no additional impact on vegetation. Refer to Part A(h)(v)(3.2) for correct revegetation.



# 4.1 Impact on livestock

Activity: Transportation of mine residue.

Aspect and impact description: Transportation of mine residue leading to the accidental collision with livestock.

Method for assessing risks: General accepted standards. Refer to Part B(1)(d) for a complete discussion on rehabilitation and Part B(1)(h)(i) for a complete discussion on monitoring. Refer to Part A(d) for a detailed discussion on legal compliance and standards.

<u>Changes to previous EMP:</u> The impact and risk methodology have been updated to a new format. The impact on animal life and vegetation has been updated due to issues raised from the Babina Tlou Community.

CONSEQUENCE		
Nature / Intensity / Severity of Impact	Before management	With management
The risks on the livestock can be severe as it also impacts the community	3	1
Spatial extent of Impact	Before management	With management
Receptors will be in the area.	2	2
Duration of Impact	Before management	With management
Traffic potential will be short-term	1	1
LIKELIHOOD		
Probability of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
Safety risks will be improbable.	1	1
Frequency of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
Impact once annually or rarely if management measure is in place.	1	1
SIGNIFICANCE	Before management	With management
The impact before mitigation will be low and will be reduced further once mitigation is in place.	8	6
Cumulative impacts		l
All roads in the area contribute to traffic.		
Environmental objective		
Ensure traffic does not affect the safety of livestock.		



Management	Phase applicable	Management	Monitoring	Management	Responsibilities for	Financial provision for	Mitigation
measures to be	to management	tools	programmes	timeframe and	implementation and	long-term maintenance	hierarchy
applied	measure			schedule	long-term maintenance	and/or environmental	
						costs	
All vehicles will drive	Operational until	Generally	Compliance with	Ongoing.	Mine manager.	None.	Minimise.
within the speed	closure.	accepted	social and labour				
limits of the mine and		standards, social	plan and				
avoid knocking		and labour plan.	adhering to				
livestock.			speed limits.				

Issue raised by Babina Tlou Community.

Legal compliance and standards

NRTA

Residual and latent risks

No residual or latent risks.

#### 5 Surface water

# 5.1 Impact on surface water quality

Activity: Sloping and remining of the slimes dam, waste rock dumps and the pits.

Aspect and impact description: Surface water pollution due to run-off from already existing mine residue.

Method for assessing risks: Information for this risk was extracted from the Quarterly Water Quality Monitoring Report (BECS Environmental, 2018).

Refer to Part B(1)(d) for a complete discussion on rehabilitation and Part B(1)(h)(i) for a complete discussion on monitoring. Refer to Part A(d) for a detailed discussion on legal compliance and standards.

<u>Changes to previous EMP:</u> The impact and risk methodology have been updated to a new format. The impact on the surface water will remain the same.

CONSEQUENCE		
Nature / Intensity / Severity of Impact	Before management	With management
Sloping of mine residue may have a low severity.	1	1
Spatial extent of Impact	Before management	With management



Receptors which may be influenced by the mining activities include the users in the Mogomotsi River (aquatic	2	2
species, livestock, wildlife).		
Duration of Impact	Before management	With management
Pollution potential will be permanent, depending on new monitoring results	3	3
LIKELIHOOD		
Probability of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
Sedimentation from mine residue will be probable.	2	1
Frequency of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
Impact occurs at least once in a year or less frequently	1	1
SIGNIFICANCE	Before management	With management
The impact will be low prior to mitigation but will be reduced further with mitigation, the impact will be negative.	9	8

There are various activities in the area that can also impact on the water resources in the area. This includes the community.

# **Environmental objective**

To prevent the contamination and sedimentation of surface water resources.

Management	Phase	Management	Monitoring	Management	Responsibilities for	Financial provision	Mitigation
measures to be	applicable to	tools	programmes	timeframe and	implementation and	for long-term	hierarchy
applied	management			schedule	long-term	maintenance and/or	
	measure				maintenance	environmental	
						costs	
All quarries will be	Operational until	Rehabilitation	Erosion monitoring.	Erosion removal as	Mine manager.	None.	Minimise.
sloped to reduce	5 years after	plan.		necessary. Erosion			
erosion and	closure.			monitoring monthly.			
subsequent							
sedimentation.							
The slimes dam will be	Operational until	Rehabilitation	Vegetation	Revegetation and	Mine manager.	None.	Minimise.
revegetated. This will	5 years after	plan.	monitoring.	vegetation monitoring			
help to reduce any	closure.			as per the rehabilitation			
				plan. Mine residue			



form of sedimentation				characteristics will be	
from the dam.				once-off only if	
				necessary.	
Overall clean-up of	Operational until	Approved water	Surface water	Surface water quality Mine manager	Minimise.
area.	5 years after	monitoring	quality monitoring;	monitoring monthly; and	
	closure.	programme.	and monitoring of	monitoring of surface	
			surface water	water drainage systems	
			drainage systems.	during rainy seasons.	

None

### Legal compliance and standards

Section 21 of the NWA sets out the water uses for which an IWUL is required.

#### Residual and latent risks

Depending on the results of further monitoring, the risk of potential pollution and sedimentation will not be a latent risk.

#### 6. Groundwater

# 6.1 Impact on ground water quality

Activity: Sloping and remining of the slimes dam, waste rock dumps and the pits.

Aspect and impact description: Seepage from already existing mine residue leading to groundwater pollution and/or AMD.

Method for assessing risks: Information for this risk was extracted from the Hydrogeological Report (Shangoni Management Services, 2013) conducted for Krugerspost Mine. These mines are not close to each other, however, the mineral mined are both Andalusite. Refer to Part B(1)(d) for a complete discussion on rehabilitation and Part B(1)(h)(i) for a complete discussion on monitoring. Refer to Part A(d) for a detailed discussion on legal compliance and standards.

<u>Changes to previous EMP:</u> The impact and risk methodology have been updated to a new format. The impact on the ground water will remain the same.

CONSEQUENCE		
Nature / Intensity / Severity of Impact	Before management	With management



Groundwater pollution: The pH is likely to be neutral to slightly alkaline and heavy metal solubilisation will,	3	3
therefore, be minimal. Further, it can be determined that the waste present a slight/ low risk to the environment		
posed by the sloping of mine residue.		
AMD: The pH is likely to be neutral to slightly alkaline, therefore the severity of acid mine drainage will be	0	0
negligible.		
Spatial extent of Impact	Before management	With management
Vertical seepage will dominate during the operational phase due to the high hydraulic conductivity of fines	2	2
thereby reducing horizontal seepage risks towards the matrix and receiving environment. Seepage loads from		
the slimes and tailings wastes will, therefore, most probably remain isolated during the operational phases.		
Duration of Impact	Before management	With management
Pollution potential will be permanent, depending on new monitoring results.	4	4
LIKELIHOOD	1	_
Probability of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
Groundwater pollution: Although it is expected that vertical seepage will dominate over horizontal seepage, it	2	2
may nevertheless remain a potential risk towards the receiving environment. This would be especially true if		
large-scale fracturing and/ weathering are present in the host matrix.		
AMD: It is unlikely that significant acid (if any) will be generated from the mine residue.	0	0
Frequency of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
Impact occurs at least once in a year or less frequently.	1	14
SIGNIFICANCE	Before management	With management
<u>Groundwater pollution:</u> The impact prior to mitigation will be medium and will be reduced to low with mitigation.	14	9
The impact will have a negative effect.		
AMD: There is no AMD taking place, therefore there is no impact significance.	0	0
	1	1

Groundwater can be polluted from the mining of Andalusite or the pollution from the nearby township. There are villages in the area which can contribute largely to groundwater pollution.

# **Environmental objective**

To reduce any groundwater pollution that may occur.



Management	Phase	Management	Monitoring	Management timeframe	Responsibilities for	Financial provision	Mitigation
measures to be	applicable to	tools	programmes	and schedule	implementation and	for long-term	hierarchy
applied	management				long-term	maintenance and/or	
	measure				maintenance	environmental costs	
All residue will be	Operational until	Water	Topographical	Correct sloping must be	Mine surveyor and	None.	Minimise.
sloped. This will help to	closure.	monitoring	reshaping.	ongoing. Monitoring of	mine manager.		
reduce any form of		programme.		sloping once after			
seepage from the mine				reshaping.			
residue.							
All residue will be	Operational until 5	Water	Vegetation	Revegetation and	Mine manager.	None.	Minimise.
adequately vegetated.	years after	monitoring	monitoring.	vegetation monitoring as			
This will help to reduce	closure.	programme.		per the rehabilitation			
any form of seepage				plan. Mine residue			
from the mine residue.				characteristics will be			
				once-off only if			
				necessary.			
Boreholes must be	Operational until 5	Water	Groundwater	Groundwater quality	Mine manager.	None.	Minimise.
drilled as per the IWUL	years after	monitoring	quality	monitoring quarterly; and			
to monitor the	closure.	programme.	monitoring.	drilling once-off			
groundwater quality.							
Stakeholder expecta	tions and / or con	nments			1		

None.

# Legal compliance and standards

Section 21 of the National Water Act sets out the water uses for which an IWUL is required. Regulation 4 of GN 632 of 2015 under NEMWA (Regulations Regarding the Planning and Management of Mine Residue) under NEMWA'

### Residual and latent risks

Depending on the results of further monitoring, the risk of potential pollution (excluding acid mine drainage) will be a residual risk. The potential for acid mine drainage becoming a latent impact is not probable.



# 7. Air quality

The following information has been extracted from the Annesley Air Impact Assessment (Shangoni Management Services, 2018)

# 7.1 Construction phase (Havercroft & Segorong)

# 7.1.1 Impact on air quality through small particulate air pollution

Activity: Remining and transportation of mine residue. Upgrade of the Heavy Medium Separation ("HMS") plant.

Aspect and impact description: Health impacts on susceptible groups due to small particulate (PM10 & PM2.5) air pollution.

Method for assessing risks: Qualitative assessment. Refer to Part B(1)(d) for a complete discussion on rehabilitation and Part B(1)(h)(i) for a complete discussion on monitoring. Refer to Part A(d) for a detailed discussion on legal compliance and standards.

Changes to previous EMP: The impact and risk methodology have been updated to a new format. The impact on the air quality will remain the same.

CONSEQUENCE		
Nature / Intensity / Severity of Impact	Before management	With management
Medium, considering other PM10 and PM2.5 sources in the area (mining operations in the Steelpoort area,	3	1
Annesley's mining operations and Annesley's dryer) and their cumulative effect.		
Spatial extent of Impact	Before management	With management
Local, as the atmosphere and valley exit provide a pathway for air pollution to reach surrounding communities.	2	1
Duration of Impact	Before management	With management
Pollution potential will be short-term for the duration of the installation of the HMS plant.	1	1
LIKELIHOOD	L	<u>I</u>
Probability of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
Dust generation will be probable considering the cumulative effect of other sources, the possibility of polluted	2	1
air becoming trapped and/or recirculated in a mountain valley system, the presence of communities within a 5		
km radius from the site and the valley exits and atmospheric pathway.		
Frequency of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
Daily (An impact is expected when the daily and annual average NAAQS for PM10 and PM2.5 is exceeded.	5	5
Due to the qualitative nature of this risk assessment a conservative approach was taken to select the highest		
frequency of occurrence).		
SIGNIFICANCE	Before management	With management
Medium before mitigation to low after mitigation.	13	9



Mining operations in the Steelpoort area, Annesley's mining operations and emissions from Annesley's coal-fired dryer.

# **Environmental objective**

To minimise the generation of small particulate emissions by vehicles and mobile equipment traveling on unpaved roads.

Management	Phase	Management	Monitoring	Management	Responsibilities for	Financial provision	Mitigation
measures to be	applicable to	tools	programmes	timeframe and	implementation and	for long-term	hierarchy
applied	management			schedule	long-term	maintenance and/or	
	measure				maintenance	environmental costs	
All residue will be	Operational until	Rehabilitation	Vegetation	Revegetation and	Mine manager	None.	Rehabilitation.
adequately vegetated.	5 years after	plan.	monitoring.	vegetation monitoring as			
This will help to	closure.			per the rehabilitation			
reduce dust				plan. Mine residue			
generation. Dust				characteristics will be			
suppression will take				once-off only if			
place.				necessary.			
All vehicles will drive	Operational until	Signage.	Fall-out dust	Fall-out dust monitoring	Mine manager.	None.	Minimise.
within the speed limits	closure.		monitoring.	monthly.			
of the mine ≤40 km/hr.							
A dust management	Construction	Dust					
plan, in line with the		management					
National Dust Control	Operational	plan.					
Regulations.	Closure						
Ensure the Annesley		Dust					
maintains compliance		management					
with its Atmospheric	Operational	plan.					
Emission Licence	Sporational						
(SK17/1/8/5/AEL/ANN							
ANDA/MINE).							
Stakeholder expect	ations and / or co	mments	L				ı

Stakeholder expectations and / or comments

None



## Legal compliance and standards

GN 351 of 2014 (Regulations Regarding the Phasing-out and Management of Ozone- Depleting Substances) under NEMAQA. Regulations 9(f) & 11 of GN 632 of 2015 (Regulations Regarding the Planning and Management of Residue Stockpiles and Residue Deposits) under NEMWA

#### Residual and latent risks

No residual or latent risks.

#### 7.1.2 Dustfall

Activity: Remining and transportation of mine residue and upgrading of the HMS plant.

<u>Aspect and impact description:</u> Air pollution due to dust from remining of mine residue as well as transportation of mine residue. Nuisance impact of dust on the surrounding settlements.

Method for assessing risks: Qualitative assessment. Refer to Part B(1)(d) for a complete discussion on rehabilitation and Part B(1)(h)(i) for a complete discussion on monitoring. Refer to Part A(d) for a detailed discussion on legal compliance and standards.

Changes to previous EMP: The impact and risk methodology have been updated to a new format. The impact on the air quality will remain the same.

CONSEQUENCE		
Nature / Intensity / Severity of Impact	Before management	With management
Medium, considering other dust sources in the area (Annesley's mining operations) and their cumulative effect.	3	1
Spatial extent of Impact	Before management	With management
On-site, considering the low intensity construction activities, communities are located >2 km away from the HMS	1	1
plant and that Annesley's dustfall monitoring programmes shows the mine to be in compliance with the NDCR's		
standard for non-residential areas.		
Duration of Impact	Before management	With management
Pollution potential will be short-term considering the short duration of the installation of the HMS plant.	1	1
LIKELIHOOD		
Probability of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
Probable/Possible, considering the cumulative effect of other sources, the low winter rainfall and average	2	1
summer rainfall, the possibility of higher winds, the presence of communities within a 5 km radius from the site		
and the valley exits and atmospheric pathway.		



Frequency of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
Daily (An impact is expected when the NDCR's daily standard for non-residential areas is exceeded. Due to the	5	5
qualitative nature of this risk assessment a conservative approach was taken to select the highest frequency of		
occurrence).		
SIGNIFICANCE	Before management	With management
The impact prior to mitigation is low but with mitigation it can be lowered further. The impact will have a negative impact on the environment.	12	8

All dirt roads in the area contribute to dust.

# **Environmental objective**

To minimise the generation of dust by vehicles and mobile equipment traveling on unpaved roads.

Management	Phase	Management	Monitoring	Management	Responsibilities for	Financial provision	Mitigation
measures to be	applicable to	tools	programmes	timeframe and	implementation and	for long-term	hierarchy
applied	management			schedule	long-term	maintenance and/or	
	measure				maintenance	environmental costs	
All residue will be	Operational until	Rehabilitation	Vegetation	Revegetation and	Mine manager	None.	Rehabilitation.
adequately vegetated.	5 years after	plan.	monitoring.	vegetation monitoring as			
This will help to	closure.			per the rehabilitation			
reduce dust				plan. Mine residue			
generation. Dust				characteristics will be			
suppression will take				once-off only if			
place.				necessary.			
All vehicles will drive	Operational until	Signage.	Fall-out dust	Fall-out dust monitoring	Mine manager.	None.	Minimise.
within the speed limits	closure.		monitoring.	monthly.			
of the mine ≤40 km/hr.							
A dust management	Construction	Dust					
plan, in line with the		management					
National Dust Control	Operational	plan.					
Regulations.	Closure						



Ensure the Annesley		Dust
maintains compliance		management
with its Atmospheric	Operational	plan.
Emission Licence	Operational	
(SK17/1/8/5/AEL/ANN		
ANDA/MINE).		

None

#### Legal compliance and standards

GN 351 of 2014 (Regulations Regarding the Phasing-out and Management of Ozone- Depleting Substances) under NEMAQA. Regulations 9(f) & 11 of GN 632 of 2015 (Regulations Regarding the Planning and Management of Residue Stockpiles and Residue Deposits) under NEMWA

### Residual and latent risks

No residual or latent risks.

## 7.1.3 Impact on air quality by other criteria pollutants

Activity: Remining and transportation of mine residue and the upgrading pf the HMS plant.

Aspect and impact description: Health impacts on susceptible groups due to combustion gases from vehicle/equipment exhaust emissions.

Method for assessing risks: Qualitative assessment. Refer to Part B(1)(d) for a complete discussion on rehabilitation and Part B(1)(h)(i) for a complete discussion on monitoring. Refer to Part A(d) for a detailed discussion on legal compliance and standards.

Changes to previous EMP: The impact and risk methodology have been updated to a new format. The impact on the air quality will remain the same.

CONSEQUENCE		
Nature / Intensity / Severity of Impact	Before management	With management
Medium, considering other sources in the area (mining operations in the Steelpoort area, Annesley's mining	3	1
operations and Annesley's dryer) and their cumulative effect.		
Spatial extent of Impact	Before management	With management
Receptors will be in the area as the atmosphere and valley exits provide a pathway for air pollution to reach	2	1
surrounding communities.		
Duration of Impact	Before management	With management



Pollution potential will be short-term considering the short duration of the installation of the HMS plant.	1	1
LIKELIHOOD		
Probability of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
Probable/Possible, considering the cumulative effect of other sources, the possibility of polluted air becoming	2	1
trapped and/or recirculated in a mountain valley system, the presence of communities within a 5 km radius from		
the site and the valley exits and atmospheric pathway.		
Frequency of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
Daily (An impact is expected when the NAAQS for pollutants are exceeded. Due to the qualitative nature of this	5	5
risk assessment a conservative approach was taken to select the highest frequency of occurrence).		3
SIGNIFICANCE	Before management	With management
Medium before mitigation to low after mitigation.	13	9

Fuel combustion by vehicles and mobile equipment used in the mining operations in the Steelpoort area, Annesley's mining operations and emissions from Annesley's coal-fired dryer.

## **Environmental objective**

To minimise the generation of combustion emissions by vehicles and mobile equipment.

Management	Phase	Management	Monitoring	Management	Responsibilities for	Financial provision	Mitigation
measures to be	applicable to	tools	programmes	timeframe and	implementation and	for long-term	hierarchy
applied	management			schedule	long-term	maintenance and/or	
	measure				maintenance	environmental costs	
All residue will be	Operational until	Rehabilitation	Vegetation	Revegetation and	Mine manager	None.	Rehabilitation.
adequately vegetated.	5 years after	plan.	monitoring.	vegetation monitoring as			
This will help to	closure.			per the rehabilitation			
reduce dust				plan. Mine residue			
generation. Dust				characteristics will be			
suppression will take				once-off only if			
place.				necessary.			



All vehicles will drive	Operational until	Signage.	Fall-out	dust	Fall-out dust monitoring	Mine manager.	None.	Minimise.
within the speed limits	closure.		monitoring		monthly.			
of the mine ≤40 km/hr.								
A dust management	Construction	Dust						
plan, in line with the		management						
National Dust Control	Operational	plan.						
Regulations.	Closure							
Ensure the Annesley		Dust						
maintains compliance		management						
with its Atmospheric	Operational	plan.						
Emission Licence	Operational							
(SK17/1/8/5/AEL/ANN								
ANDA/MINE).								

None

#### Legal compliance and standards

GN 351 of 2014 (Regulations Regarding the Phasing-out and Management of Ozone- Depleting Substances) under NEMAQA. Regulations 9(f) & 11 of GN 632 of 2015 (Regulations Regarding the Planning and Management of Residue Stockpiles and Residue Deposits) under NEMWA

#### Residual and latent risks

No residual or latent risks.

# 7.2 Operational phase (Havercroft & Segorong)

# 7.2.1 Impact on air quality through small particulate air pollution

Activity: Remining: material handling by excavators and front-end loaders, hauling, material transfer, conveying, crushing, screening and dumping.

Aspect and impact description: Health impacts on susceptible groups due to small particulate (PM10 & PM2.5) air pollution.

<u>Method for assessing risks</u>: Emission inventory and dispersion modelling. Refer to Part B(1)(d) for a complete discussion on rehabilitation and Part B(1)(h)(i) for a complete discussion on monitoring. Refer to Part A(d) for a detailed discussion on legal compliance and standards.

Changes to previous EMP: The impact and risk methodology have been updated to a new format. The impact on the air quality will remain the same.



CONSEQUENCE											
Nature / Intensity / S	Severity of Impact						Before r	nanageme	nt With	management	
High, considering: the	e dispersion model	results for the pro	oposed remining	project show exceed	dance	of the daily	5		3		
PM10 standard is pos	ssible and the pres	ence of other PM	110 and PM2.5 so	ources in the area (n	nining	operations					
in the Steelpoort area	a, Annesley's minin	g operations and	Annesley's drye	r) and their cumulati	ve eff	ect.					
Spatial extent of Im		Before r	nanageme	nt With	management						
Local, as the atmosp	here and valley exi	t provide a pathw	ay for air pollutio	n to reach surround	ing co	mmunities.	2		1		
<b>Duration of Impact</b>							Before r	nanageme	nt With	management	
Long-term. The risk of	of the impact will re	main for the dura	tion of the life of	the project.			3		3		
LIKELIHOOD											
Probability of poten	tial occurrence of	the Impact					Before r	nanageme	nt With	management	
Highly probable, con	sidering the cumu	lative effect of of	ther sources, the	possibility of pollut	ted ai	r becoming	3		2		
trapped and/or recirc	ulated in a mountai	n valley system, t	he presence of c	ommunities within a	5 km	radius from					
the site and the valle	y exits and atmosp	heric pathway.									
Frequency of poten	tial occurrence of	the Impact					Before management		nt With	With management	
Daily (An impact is ex	xpected when the c	daily and annual a	average NAAQS	for PM10 and PM2.	5 is ex	ceeded.)	5		1		
SIGNIFICANCE							Before management		nt With	With management	
High before mitigation	n to low after mitiga	ation.					18		10	10	
Cumulative impacts	3										
Mining operations in	the Steelpoort area	ı, Annesley's min	ing operations ar	nd emissions from A	nnesle	ey's coal-fire	d dryer.				
Environmental obje	ctive										
To minimise the generation of small particulate emissions by hauling and vehicles traveling on unpaved roads and the crushing and screening of material.								f material.			
Management Phase Management Monitoring Management Responsi								Financial	provision	Mitigation	
measures to be	applicable to	tools	programmes	timeframe	and	implementa	tion and	for	long-term	hierarchy	
applied	management			schedule		long-term		maintenan	ce and/or		
	measure					maintenance	environmental costs				



All residue will be	Operational until	Rehabilitation	Vegetation	Revegetation and	Mine manager	None.	Rehabilitation.
adequately vegetated.	5 years after	plan.	monitoring.	vegetation monitoring as			
This will help to	closure.			per the rehabilitation			
reduce dust				plan. Mine residue			
generation. Dust				characteristics will be			
suppression will take				once-off only if			
place.				necessary.			
All vehicles will drive	Operational until	Signage.	Fall-out dust	Fall-out dust monitoring	Mine manager.	None.	Minimise.
within the speed limits	closure.		monitoring.	monthly.			
of the mine ≤40 km/hr.							
A dust management	Construction	Dust					
plan, in line with the		management					
National Dust Control	Operational	plan.					
Regulations.	Closure						
Ensure the Annesley		Dust					
maintains compliance		management					
with its Atmospheric	Operational	plan.					
Emission Licence	Operational						
(SK17/1/8/5/AEL/ANN							
ANDA/MINE).							
Stakeholder expects	otions and / or as	mmonto	I	I	I.		II.

None

# Legal compliance and standards

GN 351 of 2014 (Regulations Regarding the Phasing-out and Management of Ozone- Depleting Substances) under NEMAQA. Regulations 9(f) & 11 of GN 632 of 2015 (Regulations Regarding the Planning and Management of Residue Stockpiles and Residue Deposits) under NEMWA

#### Residual and latent risks

No residual or latent risks.

### 7.2.2 Dustfall

Activity: Remining: material handling by excavators and front-end loaders, hauling, material transfer, conveying, crushing, screening and dumping.



Aspect and impact description: Nuisance impact of dust on the surrounding settlements.

Method for assessing risks: Emission inventory and dispersion modelling. Refer to Part B(1)(d) for a complete discussion on rehabilitation and Part B(1)(h)(i) for a complete discussion on monitoring. Refer to Part A(d) for a detailed discussion on legal compliance and standards.

Changes to previous EMP: The impact and risk methodology have been updated to a new format. The impact on the air quality will remain the same.

CONSEQUENCE		
Nature / Intensity / Severity of Impact	Before management	With management
Medium, considering the presence of other dustfall sources in the area (mining operations in the Steelpoort area	3	1
and Annesley's mining operations) and their cumulative effect.		
Spatial extent of Impact	Before management	With management
Local, considering the proximity of communities to Havercroft.	2	1
Duration of Impact	Before management	With management
Long-term. The risk of the impact will remain for the duration of the life of the project.	3	3
LIKELIHOOD	,	
Probability of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
Probable/Possible, considering the cumulative effect of other sources, the low winter rainfall and average	2	1
summer rainfall, the possibility of higher winds, the presence of communities within a 5 km radius from the site		
and the valley exits and atmospheric pathway.		
Frequency of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
Daily (An impact is expected when the NDCR's daily standard for non-residential areas is exceeded).	5	1
SIGNIFICANCE	Before management	With management
Medium before mitigation to low after mitigation.	15	7

## **Cumulative impacts**

Mining operations in the Steelpoort area and Annesley's mining operations.

## **Environmental objective**

To minimise the generation of dust by hauling and vehicles traveling on unpaved roads and the crushing and screening of material.



Management	Phase	Management	Monitoring	Management	Responsibilities for	Financial provision	Mitigation
measures to be	applicable to	tools	programmes	timeframe and	implementation and	for long-term	hierarchy
applied	management			schedule	long-term	maintenance and/or	
	measure				maintenance	environmental costs	
All residue will be	Operational until	Rehabilitation	Vegetation	Revegetation and	Mine manager	None.	Rehabilitation.
adequately vegetated.	5 years after	plan.	monitoring.	vegetation monitoring as			
This will help to	closure.			per the rehabilitation			
reduce dust				plan. Mine residue			
generation. Dust				characteristics will be			
suppression will take				once-off only if			
place.				necessary.			
All vehicles will drive	Operational until	Signage.	Fall-out dust	Fall-out dust monitoring	Mine manager.	None.	Minimise.
within the speed limits	closure.		monitoring.	monthly.			
of the mine ≤40 km/hr.							
A dust management	Construction	Dust					
plan, in line with the		management					
National Dust Control	Operational	plan.					
Regulations.	Closure						
Ensure the Annesley		Dust					
maintains compliance		management					
with its Atmospheric	Operational	plan.					
Emission Licence	Operational						
(SK17/1/8/5/AEL/ANN							
ANDA/MINE).							
Stakeholder expects	stiene end / en ee	mmonto					l .

None

# Legal compliance and standards

GN 351 of 2014 (Regulations Regarding the Phasing-out and Management of Ozone- Depleting Substances) under NEMAQA. Regulations 9(f) & 11 of GN 632 of 2015 (Regulations Regarding the Planning and Management of Residue Stockpiles and Residue Deposits) under NEMWA

### Residual and latent risks



No residual or latent risks.

# 7.2.3 Impact on air quality by other criteria pollutants

Activity: Remining: material handling by excavators and front-end loaders, hauling, material transfer, conveying, crushing, screening and dumping.

Aspect and impact description: Health impacts on susceptible groups due to combustion gases from vehicle/equipment exhaust emissions.

Method for assessing risks: Qualitative assessment. Refer to Part B(1)(d) for a complete discussion on rehabilitation and Part B(1)(h)(i) for a complete discussion on monitoring. Refer to Part A(d) for a detailed discussion on legal compliance and standards.

Changes to previous EMP: The impact and risk methodology have been updated to a new format. The impact on the air quality will remain the same.

CONSEQUENCE		
Nature / Intensity / Severity of Impact	Before management	With management
Medium, considering other sources in the area (mining operations in the Steelpoort area, Annesley's mining	3	1
operations and Annesley's dryer) and their cumulative effect.		
Spatial extent of Impact	Before management	With management
Local, as the atmosphere and valley exits provide a pathway for air pollution to reach surrounding communities.	2	1
Duration of Impact	Before management	With management
Long-term. The risk of the impact will remain for the duration of the life of the project.	3	3
LIKELIHOOD		
Probability of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
Probable/Possible, considering the cumulative effect of other sources, the possibility of polluted air becoming	2	1
trapped and/or recirculated in a mountain valley system, the presence of communities within a 5 km radius from		
the site and the valley exits and atmospheric pathway.		
Frequency of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
Daily (An impact is expected when the NAAQS for pollutants are exceeded. Due to the qualitative nature of this		-
risk assessment a conservative approach was taken to select the highest frequency of occurrence).	5	5
SIGNIFICANCE	Before management	With management
Medium before mitigation to low after mitigation.	15	11
Cumulative impacts		



Fuel combustion by vehicles and mobile equipment used in the mining operations in the Steelpoort area, Annesley's mining operations and emissions from Annesley's coal-fired dryer.

## **Environmental objective**

To minimise the generation of combustion emissions by vehicles and mobile equipment.

Management	Phase	Management	Monitoring	Management	Responsibilities for	Financial provision	Mitigation
measures to be	applicable to	tools	programmes	timeframe and	implementation and	for long-term	hierarchy
applied	management			schedule	long-term	maintenance and/or	
	measure				maintenance	environmental costs	
All residue will be	Operational until	Rehabilitation	Vegetation	Revegetation and	Mine manager	None.	Rehabilitation.
adequately vegetated.	5 years after	plan.	monitoring.	vegetation monitoring as			
This will help to	closure.			per the rehabilitation			
reduce dust				plan. Mine residue			
generation. Dust				characteristics will be			
suppression will take				once-off only if			
place.				necessary.			
All vehicles will drive	Operational until	Signage.	Fall-out dust	Fall-out dust monitoring	Mine manager.	None.	Minimise.
within the speed limits	closure.		monitoring.	monthly.			
of the mine ≤40 km/hr.							
A dust management	Construction	Dust					
plan, in line with the	Operational	management					
National Dust Control	•	plan.					
Regulations.	Closure						
Ensure the Annesley		Dust					
maintains compliance		management					
with its Atmospheric	Operational	plan.					
Emission Licence	- F 3. 2. 12. 12.						
(SK17/1/8/5/AEL/ANN							
ANDA/MINE).							
Stakohalder evpeet	-4:		-		-		

Stakeholder expectations and / or comments

None



## Legal compliance and standards

GN 351 of 2014 (Regulations Regarding the Phasing-out and Management of Ozone- Depleting Substances) under NEMAQA. Regulations 9(f) & 11 of GN 632 of 2015 (Regulations Regarding the Planning and Management of Residue Stockpiles and Residue Deposits) under NEMWA

#### Residual and latent risks

No residual or latent risks.

## 7.3 Closure phase (Havercroft & Segorong)

### 7.3.1 Impact on air quality through small particulate air pollution

<u>Activity:</u> Remining: material handling by excavators and front-end loaders, hauling, material transfer, conveying, crushing, screening and dumping. <u>Aspect and impact description:</u> Health impacts on susceptible groups due to small particulate (PM10 & PM2.5) air pollution.

Method for assessing risks: Qualitative assessment. Refer to Part B(1)(d) for a complete discussion on rehabilitation and Part B(1)(h)(i) for a complete discussion on monitoring. Refer to Part A(d) for a detailed discussion on legal compliance and standards.

Changes to previous EMP: The impact and risk methodology have been updated to a new format. The impact on the air quality will remain the same.

CONSEQUENCE							
Nature / Intensity / Severity of Impact	Before management	With management					
Medium, considering the presence of other PM10 and PM2.5 sources in the area (mining operations in the	3	1					
Steelpoort area, Annesley's mining operations and Annesley's dryer) and their cumulative effect.							
Spatial extent of Impact	Before management	With management					
Local, as the atmosphere and valley exit provide a pathway for air pollution to reach surrounding communities.	2	1					
Duration of Impact	Before management	With management					
Long-term. The risk of the impact will remain for the duration of the decommissioning and rehabilitation activities.	3	3					
LIKELIHOOD							
Probability of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management					
Probable/Possible, considering the cumulative effect of other sources, the possibility of polluted air becoming	2	1					
trapped and/or recirculated in a mountain valley system, the presence of communities within a 5 km radius from							
the site and the valley exits and atmospheric pathway.							
Frequency of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management					



Daily (An impact is expected when the daily and annual average NAAQS for PM10 and PM2.5 is exceeded.	5	5
Due to the qualitative nature of this risk assessment a conservative approach was taken to select the highest		
frequency of occurrence).		
SIGNIFICANCE	Before management	With management
Medium before mitigation to low after mitigation	15	11

Mining operations in the Steelpoort area, Annesley's mining operations and emissions from Annesley's coal-fired dryer.

## **Environmental objective**

To minimise the generation of small particulate emissions by vehicles traveling on unpaved roads and other decommissioning and rehabilitation activities.

Management	Phase	Management	Monitoring	Management	Responsibilities for	Financial provision	Mitigation
measures to be	applicable to	tools	programmes	timeframe and	implementation and	for long-term	hierarchy
applied	management			schedule	long-term	maintenance and/or	
	measure				maintenance	environmental costs	
All residue will be	Operational until	Rehabilitation	Vegetation	Revegetation and	Mine manager	None.	Rehabilitation.
adequately vegetated.	5 years after	plan.	monitoring.	vegetation monitoring as			
This will help to	closure.			per the rehabilitation			
reduce dust				plan. Mine residue			
generation. Dust				characteristics will be			
suppression will take				once-off only if			
place.				necessary.			
All vehicles will drive	Operational until	Signage.	Fall-out dust	Fall-out dust monitoring	Mine manager.	None.	Minimise.
within the speed limits	closure.		monitoring.	monthly.			
of the mine ≤40 km/hr.							
A dust management	Construction	Dust					
plan, in line with the		management					
National Dust Control	Operational	plan.					
Regulations.	Closure						
Ensure the Annesley		Dust					
maintains compliance	Operational	management					
with its Atmospheric		plan.					



Emission Licence				
(SK17/1/8/5/AEL/ANN				
ANDA/MINE).				

### Stakeholder expectations and / or comments

None

### Legal compliance and standards

GN 351 of 2014 (Regulations Regarding the Phasing-out and Management of Ozone- Depleting Substances) under NEMAQA. Regulations 9(f) & 11 of GN 632 of 2015 (Regulations Regarding the Planning and Management of Residue Stockpiles and Residue Deposits) under NEMWA

### Residual and latent risks

No residual or latent risks.

### 7.3.2 Dustfall

<u>Activity:</u> Material handling, movement of vehicles and mobile equipment on unpaved roads and other decommissioning and rehabilitation activities. <u>Aspect and impact description:</u> Nuisance impact of dust on the surrounding settlements.

Method for assessing risks: Qualitative assessment. Refer to Part B(1)(d) for a complete discussion on rehabilitation and Part B(1)(h)(i) for a complete discussion on monitoring. Refer to Part A(d) for a detailed discussion on legal compliance and standards.

Changes to previous EMP: The impact and risk methodology have been updated to a new format. The impact on the air quality will remain the same.

CONSEQUENCE		
Nature / Intensity / Severity of Impact	Before management	With management
Medium, considering the presence of other dustfall sources in the area (mining operations in the Steelpoort area	3	1
and Annesley's mining operations) and their cumulative effect.		
Spatial extent of Impact	Before management	With management
Local, considering the proximity of communities to Havercroft.	2	1
Duration of Impact	Before management	With management
Long-term. The risk of the impact will remain for the duration of the decommissioning and rehabilitation activities.	3	3
LIKELIHOOD		
Probability of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management



Probable/Possible, considering the cumulative effect of other sources, the low winter rainfall and average	2	1
summer rainfall, the possibility of higher winds, the presence of communities within a 5 km radius from the site		
and the valley exits and atmospheric pathway.		
Frequency of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
Daily (An impact is expected when the NDCR's daily standard for non-residential areas is exceeded. Due to the	5	5
qualitative nature of this risk assessment a conservative approach was taken to select the highest frequency of		
occurrence).		
SIGNIFICANCE	Before management	With management
Medium before mitigation to low after mitigation.	15	11

# **Cumulative impacts**

Mining operations in the Steelpoort area and Annesley's mining operations.

# **Environmental objective**

To minimise the generation of dust by hauling and vehicles traveling on unpaved roads and the crushing and screening of material.

Management	Phase	Management	Monitoring	Management	Responsibilities for	Financial provision	Mitigation
measures to be	applicable to	tools	programmes	timeframe and	implementation and	for long-term	hierarchy
applied	management			schedule	long-term	maintenance and/or	
	measure				maintenance	environmental costs	
All residue will be	Operational until	Rehabilitation	Vegetation	Revegetation and	Mine manager	None.	Rehabilitation.
adequately vegetated.	5 years after	plan.	monitoring.	vegetation monitoring as			
This will help to	closure.			per the rehabilitation			
reduce dust				plan. Mine residue			
generation. Dust				characteristics will be			
suppression will take				once-off only if			
place.				necessary.			
All vehicles will drive	Operational until	Signage.	Fall-out dust	Fall-out dust monitoring	Mine manager.	None.	Minimise.
within the speed limits	closure.		monitoring.	monthly.			
of the mine ≤40 km/hr.							
A dust management plan, in line with the	Construction Operational	Dust management plan.					



National Dust Control	Closure				
Regulations.					
Ensure the Annesley		Dust	-		
maintains compliance		management			
with its Atmospheric	Operational	plan.			
Emission Licence	Operational				
(SK17/1/8/5/AEL/ANN					
ANDA/MINE).					

### Stakeholder expectations and / or comments

None

### Legal compliance and standards

GN 351 of 2014 (Regulations Regarding the Phasing-out and Management of Ozone- Depleting Substances) under NEMAQA. Regulations 9(f) & 11 of GN 632 of 2015 (Regulations Regarding the Planning and Management of Residue Stockpiles and Residue Deposits) under NEMWA

#### Residual and latent risks

No residual or latent risks.

# 7.3.3 Impact on air quality by other criteria pollutants

Activity: Material handling, movement of vehicles and mobile equipment on unpaved roads and other decommissioning and rehabilitation activities.

Aspect and impact description: Health impacts on susceptible groups due to combustion gases from vehicle/equipment exhaust emissions.

Method for assessing risks: Qualitative assessment. Refer to Part B(1)(d) for a complete discussion on rehabilitation and Part B(1)(h)(i) for a complete discussion on monitoring. Refer to Part A(d) for a detailed discussion on legal compliance and standards.

Changes to previous EMP: The impact and risk methodology have been updated to a new format. The impact on the air quality will remain the same.

CONSEQUENCE		
Nature / Intensity / Severity of Impact	Before management	With management
Medium, considering other sources in the area (mining operations in the Steelpoort area, Annesley's mining	3	1
operations and Annesley's dryer) and their cumulative effect.		
Spatial extent of Impact	Before management	With management
Local, as the atmosphere and valley exits provide a pathway for air pollution to reach surrounding communities.	2	1



Duration of Impact	Before management	With management
Long-term. The risk of the impact will remain for the duration of the decommissioning and rehabilitation activities.	3	3
LIKELIHOOD		
Probability of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
Probable/Possible, considering the cumulative effect of other sources, the possibility of polluted air becoming	2	1
trapped and/or recirculated in a mountain valley system, the presence of communities within a 5 km radius from		
the site and the valley exits and atmospheric pathway.		
Frequency of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
Daily (An impact is expected when the NAAQS for pollutants are exceeded. Due to the qualitative nature of this	5	5
risk assessment a conservative approach was taken to select the highest frequency of occurrence).	3	5
SIGNIFICANCE	Before management	With management
Medium before mitigation to low after mitigation.	15	11

# **Cumulative impacts**

Fuel combustion by vehicles and mobile equipment used in the mining operations in the Steelpoort area, Annesley's mining operations and emissions from Annesley's coal-fired dryer.

# **Environmental objective**

To minimise the generation of combustion emissions by vehicles and mobile equipment.

Management	Phase	Management	Monitoring	Management	Responsibilities for	Financial provision	Mitigation
measures to be	applicable to	tools	programmes	timeframe and	implementation and	for long-term	hierarchy
applied	management			schedule	long-term	maintenance and/or	
	measure				maintenance	environmental costs	
All residue will be	Operational until	Rehabilitation	Vegetation	Revegetation and	Mine manager	None.	Rehabilitation.
adequately vegetated.	5 years after	plan.	monitoring.	vegetation monitoring as			
This will help to	closure.			per the rehabilitation			
reduce dust				plan. Mine residue			
generation. Dust				characteristics will be			
suppression will take				once-off only if			
place.				necessary.			



All vehicles will drive	Operational until	Signage.	Fall-out	dust	Fall-out dust monitoring	Mine manager.	None.	Minimise.
within the speed limits	closure.		monitoring		monthly.			
of the mine ≤40 km/hr.								
A dust management	Construction	Dust						
plan, in line with the		management						
National Dust Control	Operational	plan.						
Regulations.	Closure							
Ensure the Annesley		Dust						
maintains compliance		management						
with its Atmospheric	Operational	plan.						
Emission Licence	Operational							
(SK17/1/8/5/AEL/ANN								
ANDA/MINE).								

### Stakeholder expectations and / or comments

None

### Legal compliance and standards

GN 351 of 2014 (Regulations Regarding the Phasing-out and Management of Ozone- Depleting Substances) under NEMAQA. Regulations 9(f) & 11 of GN 632 of 2015 (Regulations Regarding the Planning and Management of Residue Stockpiles and Residue Deposits) under NEMWA

#### Residual and latent risks

No residual or latent risks.

### 8. Environmental noise

### 8.1 Environmental noise generation

Activity: Remining and transportation of mine residue.

Aspect and impact description: Environmental noise from remining of mine residue as well as transportation of mine residue.

Method for assessing risks: General accepted standards. Refer to Part B(1)(d) for a complete discussion on rehabilitation and Part B(1)(h)(i) for a complete discussion on monitoring. Refer to Part A(d) for a detailed discussion on legal compliance and standards.

<u>Changes to previous EMP:</u> The impact and risk methodology have been updated to a new format. The impact on the environmental noise will remain the same.



CONSEQUENCE		
Nature / Intensity / Severity of Impact	Before management	With management
The risks on noise pollution will not be severe and reversible.	2	1
Spatial extent of Impact	Before management	With management
Receptors will be in the area.	2	2
Duration of Impact	Before management	With management
Pollution potential will be short-term	1	1
LIKELIHOOD		
Probability of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
Noise generation will be probable.	2	1
Frequency of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
Impact occurs frequently.	3	3
SIGNIFICANCE	Before management	With management
The impact prior to mitigation is low but with mitigation can be lowered further. The impact will have a negative	10	8
impact on the environment.		

# **Cumulative impacts**

The villages and other activities in the area contribute to noise generation.

# **Environmental objective**

Ensure environmental noise is not severely affected.

Management	Phase applicable to	Management	Monitoring	Management	Responsibilities for	Financial provision for	Mitigation
measures to be	management	tools	programmes	timeframe and	implementation and	long-term	hierarchy
applied	measure			schedule	long-term maintenance	maintenance and/or	
						environmental costs	
All vehicles and	Operation and	Maintenance	Maintenance as	As per schedule of	Mine manager.	No additional costs. This	Minimise.
machinery must be	decommissioning	register.	per maintenance	maintenance		forms part of the	
maintained.	phase.		register.	register.		operating costs.	
Put a complaint	Operation and	Complaint	Maintenance as	As per schedule of	Mine manager.	No additional costs. This	Minimise.
register in place	decommissioning	register.	per complaint	maintenance		forms part of the	
which includes	phase.		register.	register.		operating costs.	



environmental											
noise.											
Stakeholder exp	Stakeholder expectations and / or comments										
None											
Legal complianc	Legal compliance and standards										
NEMAQA and Am	nbient air quality manage	ement									
Residual and late	Residual and latent risks										
No residual or late	ent risks.										

### 9. Archaeological, historical and cultural aspects

Already existing infrastructure to be used therefore no impact on Archaeological, historical and cultural aspects.

### 10. Socio-economic

# 10.1 Impact on community safety and livestock

Activity: Transportation of mine residue.

Aspect and impact description: Safety of community due to traffic from mine. Livestock may get knocked which will cost the community.

Method for assessing risks: General accepted standards. Refer to Part B(1)(d) for a complete discussion on rehabilitation and Part B(1)(h)(i) for a complete discussion on monitoring. Refer to Part A(d) for a detailed discussion on legal compliance and standards. Refer to the Addendums 4G and 4I for the minutes of the meeting with the community and the actions taken moving forward.

<u>Changes to previous EMP:</u> The impact and risk methodology have been updated to a new format. The impact on the community safety will remain the same.

CONSEQUENCE		
Nature / Intensity / Severity of Impact	Before management	With management
The risks on the community can be severe	3	1
Spatial extent of Impact	Before management	With management
Receptors will be in the area.	2	2



Duration of Impact	Before management	With management
Traffic potential will be short-term	1	1
LIKELIHOOD	<u>I</u>	L
Probability of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
Safety risks will be improbable.	1	1
Frequency of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
Impact occurs frequently.	3	3
SIGNIFICANCE	Before management	With management
The impact prior to mitigation is low but with mitigation it can be lowered further. The impact will have a negative	10	8
impact on the environment.		

# **Cumulative impacts**

All roads in the area contribute to traffic.

# **Environmental objective**

Ensure traffic does not affect the safety of the community.

Management	Phase applicable	Management	Monitoring	Management	Responsibilities for	Financial provision for	Mitigation
measures to be	to management	tools	programmes	timeframe and	implementation and	long-term maintenance	hierarchy
applied	measure			schedule	long-term maintenance	and/or environmental	
						costs	
All vehicles will drive	Operational until	Generally	Compliance with	Ongoing.	Mine manager.	None	Minimise.
within the speed	closure.	accepted	social and labour				
limits of the mine and		standards, social	plan.				
avoid knocking		and labour plan.					
livestock.							

### Stakeholder expectations and / or comments

Issue raised by Babina Tlou Community.

# Legal compliance and standards

NRTA

### Residual and latent risks



No residual or latent risks.

### 10.2 Impact on land use and land capability

Activity: Final remining of mine residue

Aspect and impact description: Returning the land to grazing for the community

Refer to Part A(h)(v)(3.2) for correct returning land capability and land use.

### 10.3 Impact on job creation

Activity: Sloping and remining of the slimes dam, waste rock dumps and the pits.

<u>Aspect and impact description:</u> Job creation involving the Babina Tlou and Roko Malepe community in the transportation of the material between the Havercroft Operation and Annesley.

Method for assessing risks: General accepted principles.

Changes to previous EMP: The impact and risk methodology have been updated to a new format. The impact on job creation will remain the same.

CONSEQUENCE		
Nature / Intensity / Severity of Impact	Before management	With management
Unemployment is a significant problem in the area. Job creation will therefore have a medium to high and	4	5
positive nature on the area.		
Spatial extent of Impact	Before management	With management
Impact occurs on-site	1	1
Duration of Impact	Before management	With management
Job opportunities for rehabilitation will only be short-term.	1	1
LIKELIHOOD		
Probability of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
Job opportunities will be created. Using local people will ensure definite job opportunities.	3	4
Frequency of potential occurrence of the Impact	Before management	With management
Once-off impacts	1	1
SIGNIFICANCE	Before management	With management



The impact will be low prior to mitigation but will increase with the remining and sloping. This will result in the overall positive impact of the project.

### **Cumulative impacts**

Mining activities in the area already provide jobs.

# **Environmental objective**

To ensure local job opportunities.

Management measures to	Phase applicable	Management	Monitoring	Management	Responsibilities for	Financial provision	Mitigation
be applied	to management	tools	programmes	timeframe and	implementation and	for long-term	hierarchy
	measure			schedule	long-term	maintenance and/or	
					maintenance	environmental costs	
The community must be	Operational until	Social and	Compliance with	Ongoing.	Human resources.	None	
employed for	closure.	Labour Plan.	social and				
decommissioning and			labour plan.				
rehabilitation activities, as							
far as possible.							

# Stakeholder expectations and / or comments

Issue raised by Babina Tlou community.

# Legal compliance and standards

None

#### Residual and latent risks

Job loss once closure is obtained.



# vi) Methodology used in determining and ranking the nature, significance, consequences, extent, duration and probability of potential environmental impacts and risks

### Impact assessment

The methodology used to assess the significance of an impact is based on the requirements as set out in EIA Regulations, (GN 982) of 2014 i.t.o. the NEMA as well as the Proposed National Guideline on Minimum Information Requirements for Preparing EIA for Mining Activities that Require EA, of 2018, GN 86 in terms of NEMA. The impact significance methodology described below also complies to Appendix B of the Operational Guideline to Integrated Water and Waste Management of 2010 in terms of the NWA. In the event of any Section 21c&i water uses in terms of the NWA being assessed, Appendix A of the General Authorisations of 2016, GN 509 in terms of the NWA will be used to construct a risk matrix. Regulation 3(b) of the General Authorisations of 2016, GN 509 in terms of the NWA states that a suitably qualified SACNASP professional member must determine risks associated with this risk matrix.

Impact identification and prediction means forecasting the change of environmental parameters due to developmental patterns. These parameters may also be changing due to climate change and should be included.

Method of assessment: Impact identification and prediction is a stepwise procedure to identify the direct, indirect and cumulative impacts (relating to both positive and negative impacts) for which a proposed activity and its alternatives will have on the environment as well as the community. This should be undertaken by determining the geographical, physical, biological, social, economic, heritage and cultural sensitivity aspects of sites and locations as well as the risk of impact of the proposed activity. Refer to part A(h)(iv) for a complete description of these environmental attributes. Sources of data to be used for gathering data on the environmental attributes as well as the impacts include; monitoring / sampling data collected and stored, assumptions and actual measurements, published data available from the departments or other stakeholders in the area as well as specialist studies. Likely impacts should be described qualitatively and then studied separately in detail. This provides consistent and systematic basis for the comparison and application of judgements.

<u>Significance rating:</u> Ratings should then be assigned to each criterion. Significance of impacts should be determined for each phase of the mining lifecycle this includes; preconstruction, construction, operational, closure (including decommissioning) and post closure phases. The significance of impacts should further be assessed both with and without mitigation action. The description of significance is largely judgemental, subjective and variable. However, generic criteria can be used systematically to identify, predict, evaluate



and determine the significance of impacts resulting from project construction, operation and decommissioning. The process of determining impact magnitude and significance should never become mechanistic. Impact magnitude is determined by empirical prediction, while impact significance should ideally involve a process of determining the acceptability of a predicted impact to society. Making the process of determining the significance of impacts more explicit, open to comment and public input would be an improvement of environmental assessment practice. Impact magnitude and significance should as far as possible be determined by reference to either legal requirements (accepted scientific standards) or social acceptability. If no legislation or scientific standards are available, the EAP can evaluate impact magnitude based on clearly described criteria. A matrix selection process is the most common methodology used in determining and ranking the site sensitivities:

- The consequence: includes the nature / intensity / severity of the impact, spatial extent of the impact, and duration of the impact.
  - The nature / intensity / severity of the impact: An evaluation of the effect of the impact related to the proposed development on the receiving environment. The impact can be either positive or negative. A description should be provided as to whether the intensity of the impact is high, medium or low or has no impact in terms of its potential for causing negative or positive effects. Cognisance should be given to climate change which may intensify impacts.
  - The spatial extent of the impact: Indication of the zone of influence of the impact: A description should be provided as to whether impacts are either limited in extent or affect a wide area or group of people. Cumulative impacts must also be considered as the extent of the impact as may increase over time.
  - The duration of the impact: It should be determined whether the duration of an impact will be short-term, medium term, long term or permanent. Cumulative impacts must also be considered as the duration of the impact as it may increase over time.
- The likelihood: includes the probability of the potential occurrence of the impact, and frequency of the potential occurrence of the impact
  - The probability of the impact: The probability is the quality or condition of being probable or likely. The probability must include the degree to which these impacts can be reversed; may cause irreplaceable loss of resources; and can be avoided, managed or mitigated
  - The frequency of the potential occurrence of the impact.
- The significance: This is worst case scenario without any management measures. See below how significance is determined: Impact that may have a notable effect on one or more aspects of the environment or may result in noncompliance with accepted environmental quality standards, thresholds or targets and is determined through rating the positive and negative effects of an impact



on the environment based on criteria such as duration, magnitude, intensity and probability of occurrence. Mitigation measures should be provided with evidence or motivation of its effectiveness

# Example of significance rating:

			Before	With
			management	management
	Nature / Intens	sity / Severity of Impact		
	Low	Impacts affect the environmental in such a way that	1	
		natural, cultural and/or social functions and processes		
		are not affected.		
	Medium	Impacts affect the environment in such a way that	3	
		natural, cultural and/or social functions and processes		
		are altered		
	High	Impacts affect the environment in such a way that	5	
		natural, cultural and/or social functions and processes		
		will temporarily or permanently cease.		
	Spatial extent	of Impact		
	On-site	Impact occurs on-site	1	
CONSEQUENCE	Local	Impact occurs within 5km radius of the site	2	
UEI	Regional	Regional Impact occurs within a 100km radius of the	3	
SEG		site		
NO	National	National Impact occurs within South Africa	4	
0	International	Impact occurs internationally	5	
	Duration of Im	pact		
	Short-term	Through dilution and dispersion, the impact reduces to	1	
		insignificant within 1 week.		
	Medium-term	Through dilution and dispersion, the impact reduces to	2	
		insignificant within the life of the mine.		
	Long-term	The impact will cease after the operational life of the	3	
		mine either because of natural process or by human		
		intervention		
	Permanent	Where mitigation either by natural process or by human	4	
		intervention will not occur in such a way or in such a		
		time span that the impact can be considered transient.		
00		potential occurrence of the Impact		
H	Improbable	The possibility of the impact materializing is very low	1	
LIKELIHOO		either because of design or historic experience		
	Probable	There is a distinct possibility that the impact will occur	2	



H	Highly	It is m	It is most likely that the impact will occur 3											
F	probable													
1	Definite	The i	The impact will occur regardless of any prevention 4											
		meas	ures											
I	Frequency o	f potenti	al occur	rence	of the	Impa	ct			•				
1	Annually o	r Impac	t occurs	at leas	st once	e in a y	ear or	less fr	equen	tly 1				
	less													
	6 months	Impac	t occurs	at leas	st once	e in 6 r	nonths	i		2				
	Monthly		t occurs							3				
\	Weekly	Impac	t occurs	at leas	st once	e a we	ek.			4				
	Daily	Impac	t occurs	daily						5				
CONSE	QUENCE													
			3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
		2	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
		3	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
		4	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18
LIKELII	HOOD	5	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19
		6	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
		7	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21
		8	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22
		9	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
Low		Where	it will	not h	ave a	a sigr	nifican	influ	ence	on th	ne 5- 1	11		
		environr	ment. M	anage	ment	meası	ıres c	an be	prop	osed	to			
		ensure t	hat sign	ficance	e does	not in	crease	<del>)</del>						
Medium	ı	Where in	t could h	ave a	signific	cant in	fluence	on th	e envi	ronme	nt 12-	17		
		unless it	t is mitiga	ated										
		or mana	O											
High		Where in	t would h	nave a	signifi	cant in	fluenc	e on th	ne envi	ronme	ent 18-	23		
		regardle	ss of an	у										
		possible	mitigat	ion ar	nd hei	nce m	iust b	e eith	er avo	oided	or			
		manage												
Medium	n positive	In the ca	ase of ar	impa	ct havi	ng a po	ositive	outco	me.		Hig	h positi	ve	

# **Mitigation and management**

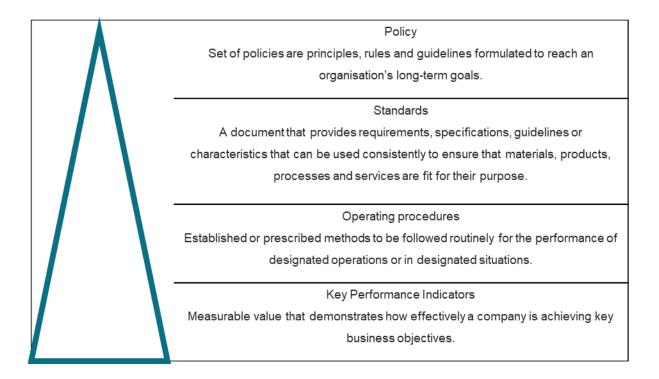
Management methodology is based on the requirements as set out in EIA Regulations, (GN 982) of 2014 i.t.o. the NEMA as well as the Proposed National Guideline on Minimum Information Requirements for Preparing EIA for Mining Activities that Require EA, of 2018, GN 86 in terms of NEMA; and the Mining and



145

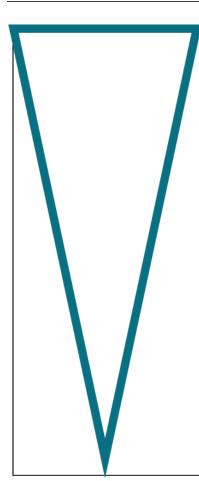
Biodiversity Guideline (Mainstreaming Biodiversity into the Mining Sector) IDB of 2013 in terms of the MPRDA.

Management statements detail the processes, procedures and practices required to achieve an impact management outcome. A hierarchy of management tools used can also be used as seen below.



Mitigation should include measures in the following order of priority. The aim is to prevent adverse impacts from happening or, where this is unavoidable, to limit their significance to an acceptable level.





### Avoid or prevent

Refers to considering options in project location, sitting, scale, layout, technology and phasing **to avoid impacts** on biodiversity, associated ecosystem services, and people. This is the best option, but Is not always possible. Where environmental and social factors give rise to unacceptable negative impacts mining should not take place. In such cases it is unlikely to be possible or appropriate to rely on the latter steps in the mitigation.

### Minimise (Modification or control measures)

Refers to considering alternatives in the project location, sitting, scale, layout, technology and phasing that would minimise impacts on biodiversity and ecosystem services. In cases where there are environmental and social constraints every effort should be made to minimise impacts. Can also include changes to process and or practices to reduce risk; or control, either through physical control or operational practices to ensure acceptable performance is maintained.

### Rehabilitate

Refers to rehabilitation and pollution clean-up of areas where impacts are unavoidable and measures are provided to return impacted areas to near-natural state or an agreed land use after mine closure. Although rehabilitation may fall short of replicating the diversity and complexity of a natural system.

### Offset

Refers to measures over and above rehabilitation to compensate for the residual negative effects on biodiversity, after every effort has been made to minimise and then rehabilitate impacts. Biodiversity offsets can provide a mechanism to compensate for significant residual impacts on biodiversity.

### Avoiding or preventing impacts

If the biodiversity (an ecosystem, habitat for threatened species, ecological corridor or area that provides essential ecosystem services) is of conservation value or importance, it is best to plan to avoid or prevent impacts altogether by changing the location, siting, method or processes of the mining activities and related infrastructure.

### Minimising impacts

Minimising impacts of mining is a mitigation measure that deals with the environment in general. In areas where the biodiversity is to be affected is of conservational value or importance, then every effort should be made to minimise those impacts that cannot be avoided or prevented. Mining companies should strive to minimise impacts on biodiversity to ensure environmental protection. Section 2 of NEMA contains environmental management principles that resonates with minimising the impact rather than stopping at mitigation, this is imperative in the mining sector.



### Rehabilitating impacted areas

Rehabilitation is the measures that are undertaken to "as far as it is reasonably practicable, rehabilitate the environment affected by the prospecting or mining operations to its natural or predetermined state or to a land use which aligns to the generally accepted principle of sustainable development. A closure plan is an essential part of rehabilitation and must be developed based on the establishment of the closure objectives and criteria.

### Biodiversity offsets

Biodiversity offsets are measurable conservation gains that help to balance any significant biodiversity losses that remain after actions to avoid, minimise and restore negative impacts have been taken. They are the last stage of mitigation and should be considered after appropriate avoidance, minimisation, and rehabilitation/restoration measures have been applied already.

When dealing with management, impact management outcomes must:

- be set for the expected activity-based impacts;
- describe the desired outcome of the management measure/s prescribed or the standard to be achieved (environmental objective);
- be clearly documented and identified per project phase as in the impact identification and significance rating process (this must be aligned to the mines closure objectives, and must therefore include predicted long-term result of the applied management measures);
- be measurable to determine compliance, which includes time frames and schedule for the implementation of the management measures; responsibilities for implementation and long-term maintenance of the management measures; financial provision for long-term maintenance; and monitoring programmes to be implemented;
- · be informed by stakeholder expectations; and
- ensure legal compliance;

Finally, the impact assessment must refer to the residual and latent impact after successful implementation of the management measures.

vii) The positive and negative impacts that the proposed activity (in terms of the initial site layout) and alternatives will have on the environment and the community that may be affected

No alternatives are applied for.



### viii) The possible mitigation measures that could be applied and the level of risk

With regard to the issues and concerns raised by affected parties provide a list of the issues raised and an assessment/ discussion of the mitigations or site layout alternatives available to accommodate or address their concerns, together with an assessment of the impacts or risks associated with the mitigation or alternatives considered).

### ix) Motivation where no alternative sites were considered

There is no alternative to the remining of mine residue. The activities in this Section 102 report is the most effective way to rehabilitate the area.

# x) Statement motivating the preferred site

Not applicable. No alterative considered.

# h) Full description of the process undertaken to identify, assess and rank the impacts and risks the activity will impose on the preferred site (In respect of the final site layout plan) through the life of the activity

Refer to Part A(g)(v & vi) above for a full description of the process undertaken to identify, assess and rank the impacts and risks the activity will impose on the preferred site (In respect of the final site layout plan) through the life of the activity.

# i) Assessment of each identified potentially significant impact and risk

Groundwater pollution is the only significant risk identified in this study. This is however, an already existing risk.

# j) Summary of specialist reports

- An air quality impact assessment was conducted in 2018 and the following aspects were noted.
   Steelpoort is considered an air quality hotspot. Of particular concern in the Steelpoort hotspot area
   is the ambient concentration of PM10. Annesley and the proposed remining project are located
   approximately 18 km east of the Steelpoort hotspot area;
- Annesley's existing mining and processing operation was identified as the primary source of air pollution in the area of the proposed remining project;
- The proposed remining project will involve material handling by excavators and front-end loaders, hauling, material transfer, conveying, crushing, screening and dumping;



- These remining activities have the potential to become major sources of dust and fine particulates (PM10 and PM2.5) and to lesser extent combustion emissions from vehicles and mobile equipment;
- The dispersion modelling results found both remining at Segorong and remining at Havercroft to:
  - Exceed the average daily NAAQS (75 μg/m3) for PM10 in proximity to the crushing and screening plant;
  - Fall below the annual average NAAQS (40 μg/m3) for PM10; and
  - Exceed the NDCR standard for non-residential areas (1200 mg/m2/day) in proximity to the crushing and screening plant.

The main conclusion of the air quality impact assessment is that the proposed remining project is likely to result in high to moderate impacts without mitigation. Its anticipated that the application of the mitigation measures as per section 4 will reduce the significance of the impacts to moderate and low.

It is Shangoni's opinion that the proposed remining project may continue if the applicant commits to implementing the mitigation measures recommended in section 4 of this report. These mitigation measures should be improved on, should dustfall- or any ambient air quality monitoring results during the construction, operational and/or the closure phase show exceedances of dustfall or the ambient air quality standards.

### k) Environmental impact statement

# (i) Summary of the key findings of the environmental impact assessment

The geology of the surrounding environment will not be altered as the project involves the remining of mine residue. The surrounding faunal and floral habitat will not be impacted by the project. Already existing infrastructure will be used therefore no impact on archaeological, historical and cultural aspects.

The topography of the area will be impacted in a positive manner as further sloping and rehabilitation on Havercroft Operation is planned for the near future. The remining of the mine residue will therefore reduce the residual impact after closure and rehabilitation.

Soils, land capability, surrounding land use and landscape character will be impacted by further by the project as it prolongs the start date of rehabilitation. If soil pollution does occur, it will be mitigated through the various management measures set out in the impact assessment. Once rehabilitation is complete, the end land-use will be grazing and game farming.



Surface water pollution due to run-off from already existing mine residue will have a negative impact on the environment. This will impact receptors which may be influenced by the mining activities include the users in the Mogomotsi River (aquatic species, livestock, wildlife). However, the approved water monitoring programme will ensure that this does not occur, and the adequate operational measures are taken.

Seepage from already existing mine residue can potentially lead to groundwater pollution. Vertical seepage will dominate during the operational phase and will most probably remain isolated during the operational phases. Management measures will ensure that the impact after management is reduced and groundwater monitoring takes place.

Short term air pollution due to dust from remining of mine residue as well as transportation of mine residue will occur but can be remediated through re-vegetation to prevent surface erosion and vehicles sticking to the correct speed limits.

Environmental noise may affect the community within the vicinity, the mine will mitigate this through the maintenance of vehicles and machinery to ensure they are functioning optimally.

The project will create temporary jobs for rehabilitation activities by using locals. However, once the mine closes the risk of unemployment arises. However, the increased traffic in the area can negatively impact receptors. This will be mitigated through speed limits.

### (ii) Final Site Map

Refer to Addendum 1 for all the maps.

# (iii) Summary of the positive and negative implications and risks of the proposed activity and identified alternatives

Environmental component	Negative implications	Positive implications
Geology	There will be no negative impact	There will be no positive impact
Topography	There will be no negative impact	The project will have a positive
		impact on topography as the
		topography of the mine residue
		areas will be changed to a more
		natural topography. This will further
		also have a positive impact on the
		drainage patterns as well as the



Environmental component	Negative implications	Positive implications
		visual aspects. There will be no
		impact from the roads, as there are
		already existing roads from all areas
		to Annesley Plant. There will also be
		no impact from the pipelines as the
		pipelines will be on already existing
		routes.
Soils	The project will have a negative	There will be no positive impact
	impact on the soil as soil pollution	
	from spillages of mine residue or	
	hydrocarbons may occur.	
Land capability, surrounding land	There will be no negative impact	The project will have a positive
use and landscape character		impact on land capability and land
		use as they will be restored to non -
		mining conditions with the
		appropriate sloping and
		rehabilitation to take place in the
		near future.
Vegetation and animal life	There will be no negative impact	There will be no positive impact
Surface water	The project may have negative	There will be no positive impact
	implications on surface water	
	resources as receptors may be	
	influenced by the mining activities	
	and include the users in the	
	Mogomotsi River (aquatic species,	
	livestock, wildlife).	
Groundwater	The project will negatively impact	There will be no positive impact
	groundwater resources as vertical	
	seepage from the already existing	
	mine residue during the operational	
	phase may occur.	
Air quality	Air pollution due to dust from	There will be no positive impact
	remining of mine residue as well as	
	transportation of mine residue has	
	the negative potential to reduce the	
	air quality without proper air quality	
	management measures as per the	
	air emissions license.	



Environmental component	Negative implications	Positive implications
Environmental noise	Environmental noise from remining	There will be no positive impact
	of mine residue as well as	
	transportation of mine residue has	
	the potential to negatively impact	
	receptors within the area.	
Archaeological, historical and	There will be no negative impact as	There will be no positive impact as
cultural aspects	already existing infrastructure to be	already existing infrastructure to be
	used therefore no impact on	used therefore no impact on
	archaeological, historical and	archaeological, historical and
	cultural aspects.	cultural aspects.
Socioeconomic	The project will have a negative	The project will have a positive
	impact on the mine as increased	impact on the community as locals
	traffic leading to the area will	will be employed by the mine.
	endanger the people walking in the	
	vicinity.	

# I) Proposed impact management objectives and the impact management outcomes for inclusion in the environmental management programme

Refer to Part A(g)(v) for all Proposed impact management objectives and the impact management outcomes for inclusion in the EIA/EMP Part B.

# m) Final proposed alternatives

There are no alternatives.

Management Programme

# n) Aspects for inclusion as conditions of Authorisation

All management measures set out in this EIA/EMP must be complied to. The mine must further comply with any conditions set out under other authorisations.

# o) Description of any assumptions, uncertainties and gaps in knowledge

1. No specialist studies were conducted. All impact assessments and management measures are based on either previous studies or on acceptable general standards.



# p) Reasoned opinion as to whether the proposed activity should or should not be authorised

### i) Reasons why the activity should be authorised or not

The proposed activity should be authorised as it will contribute largely to the production of Andalusite which is a refractory mineral that can contribute largely to South Africa's Gross Domestic Product (GDP) as South Africa has one of the highest Andalusite reserves in the world. Through the allowance remining of the mineral, the environmental impact is significantly less than starting a new project in a new vicinity which is why the project should be authorised. The project will also ensure that locals are involved and will create opportunities for skill transfer between the mine and locals.

### ii) Conditions that must be included in the authorisation

The mine must update the water monitoring requirements as soon as DWS has issued a WUL.

# q) Period for which the Environmental Authorisation is required

The period for which the authorisation will be required until 2051, the mining right will expire after 30 years where after it will be renewed.

# r) Undertaking

The undertaking required to meet the requirements of this section is provided at the end of the EMP and is applicable to both the EIA report and the EMP.

### s) Financial Provision

The financial provisioning must include:

- 1. Annual forecasted financial provision calculation;
- 2. Confirmation of the amount that will be provided should the right be granted (in this case, the mine already has a right, therefore the amount updated annually);
- 3. Method of providing financial provision contemplated in Regulation 53; and
- 4. Capacity to manage and rehabilitate the environment.

### 1 Annual forecasted financial provision calculation

The financial provision for the mine is updated on an annual basis. The update will include any changes due to this project.



# 2 Confirmation of the amount that will be provided should the right be granted

The mine has financial provision in place for the mine residue. This EIA (WL) is to remove the mine residue and place in other authorised areas. No new mine residue areas will be created. The costs as per the MWP is included. This is costs to rehabilitate the area where remining has taken place.

Table 31: Estimated environmental and rehabilitation cost (in kZAR)

CATEGORY	
	Annesley: 22,464.4 (2018 to 2037
a) Progressive total for rehabilitation	= 19 years)
	Havercroft: 17,718.14 (2018 to
	2021 = 3 years)
b) Cost to mitigate socio-economic conditions of directly affected persons	0
Total costs (19 years)	40,182.54
Total costs year 1	7,088.38
Total costs year 2	7,088.38
Total costs year 3	7,088.38
Total costs year 4	118,2.34
Total costs year 5	118,2.34
Total costs year 6	118,2.34
Total costs year 7	118,2.34
Total costs year 8	118,2.34
Total costs year 9	118,2.34
Total costs year 10	118,2.34

# 3 Method of providing financial provision contemplated in regulation 53

This amount will be provided using a bank guarantee.

### 4 Capacity to manage and rehabilitate the environment

Refer to the tables in Part A(g)(v) for a description of the environmental budget.

# t) Deviations from the approved scoping report and plan of study

The impact and management methodology has been updated.



#### Other Information required by the competent Authority u)

- i) Compliance with the provisions of sections 24(4)(a) and (b) read with section 24 (3) (a) and (7) of the National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998)
- Impact on the socio-economic conditions of any directly affected person Refer to Part A(g)(v) above.

### (2) Impact on any national estate referred to in section 3(2) of the National Heritage Resources Act

Refer to Part A(g)(v) above.

#### Other matters required in terms of sections 24(4)(a) and (b) of the Act v)

24 (4) Procedures for the investigation, assessment and communication of the potential consequences or impacts of					
activities on the environment-					
(a) must ensure, with respect to every application for an EA-					
i. Coordination and cooperation between organs of state	DMR is the only applicable authority for the proposed				
in the consideration of assessments where an activity falls	integrated EA and thus the only organ of state. DWS is,				
under the jurisdiction of more than one organ of state;	however the competent authority for the IWULA. All other				
	organs of state and stakeholders will receive the ESR as				
	well as the EIA/EMP for review.				
ii. That the findings and recommendations flowing from an	All the findings from investigations have been included in				
investigation, the general objectives of integrated	this ESR.				
environmental management laid down in this Act and the					
principles of environmental management set out in section					
2 are taken into account in any decision made by an organ					
of state in relation to any proposed policy, programme,					
process, plan or project;					
iii. That a description of the environment likely to be	Environmental baseline information, based in specialist				
significantly affected by the proposed activity is contained	studies, has been included in this ESR.				
in such application;					
iv. Investigation of the potential consequences for or	Investigation of impact on the environment and				
impacts on the environment of the activity and	assessment of the significance of the potential impacts				
assessment of the significance of those potential	have been done by specialists previously. However, for				
consequences or impacts; and	the intended project, no specialist studies were				
	conducted.				
v. Public information and participation procedures which	Refer to Part A(h)(iii) for the PPP.				
provide all I&APs, including all organs of state in all					



spheres of government that may have jurisdiction over any	
aspect of the activity, with a reasonable opportunity to	
participate in those information and participation	
procedures; and	
(b) must include, with respect to every application for an E	A and where applicable-
i. Investigation of the potential consequences or impacts	Investigation of impact on the environment and
of the alternatives to the activity on the environment and	assessment of the significance of the potential impacts
assessment of the significance of those potential	have been done by specialists. However, for the intended
consequences or impacts, including the option of not	project, no specialist studies were conducted.
implementing the activity;	
ii. Investigation of mitigation measures to keep adverse	There were no specialist studies conducted as the project
consequences or impacts to a minimum;	involves the remining and transportation of the mineral.
	Therefore, already existing management measures will be
	applied.
iii. Investigation, assessment and evaluation of the impact	Refer to Part A(h)(v)(9)
of any proposed listed or specified activity on any national	
estate referred to in section 3(2) of the National Heritage	
Resources Act, 1999 (Act No. 25 of 1999), excluding the	
national estate contemplated in section 3(2)(i)(vi) and (vii)	
of that Act;	
iv. Reporting on gaps in knowledge, the adequacy of	All gaps in knowledge, the adequacy of predictive
predictive methods and underlying assumptions, and	methods and underlying assumptions, and uncertainties
uncertainties encountered in compiling the required	encountered in compiling the required information will be
information;	included in the EIA/EMP.
v. Investigation and formulation of arrangements for the	A monitoring plan will be included in the EIA/EMP. Refer
monitoring and management of consequences for or	to Part B(h)(i)
impacts on the environment, and the assessment of the	
effectiveness of such arrangements after their	
implementation;	
vi. Consideration of environmental attributes identified in	Environmental attributes identified were taken into
the compilation of information and maps contemplated in	consideration during the process.
subsection (3); and	
vii. Provision for the adherence to requirements that are	Refer to Part B(k) for adherence to requirements that are
prescribed in a specific environmental management Act	prescribed in a specific environmental management Act
relevant to the listed or specified activity in question.	relevant to the listed or specified activity in question and
	the financial provision



# **PART B**

# **ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME REPORT**

# a) Details of the Environmental Assessment Practitioner

Refer to Part A(a) for the requirement for the provision of the details and expertise of the EAP.

# b) Description of the Aspects of the activity

The requirement to describe the aspects of the activity that are covered by the draft EMP is already included in Part A(1)(h), and (g)(v) herein as required.

# c) Composite map

Refer to Addendum 1 for all the maps.

# d) Description of impact management objectives including management statements

# i) Determination of closure objectives

### 1 End land use

The end land-use has been identified as grazing and game farming. Water accumulating within the remaining quarries will be utilised and optimised to compliment the end land-use. Sloping should be at a safe angle for cattle and other animals to graze on site and provide easy access to the water. Sloping should allow for free drainage and prevent siltation of the water resources.

### 2 Residual impacts

There will be no residual impact for geology, the surrounding faunal and floral habitat, archaeological, historical and cultural aspects as the project does not affect these environmental components. The sloping will lessen this residual impact felt on topography by the project. There will be no residual impact from soil pollution as soil pollution will be mitigated as soon as the spillage occurs. There residual risk of groundwater and surface water pollution depends on the results of water monitoring. There will be no residual impacts on air quality, environmental noise and the socio-economic component.

# 3 Closure objectives

The closure objective is to restore the land to a self-sustaining, aesthetically pleasing landform and planted to pasture that could be used for grazing by the surrounding communities.



- Demolition or disposal of structures and buildings, removal of foundations and debris and rehabilitation of the surface, subject to Section 40 of the Minerals Act
- Disposal facilities (pipes, solution trenches, return water dams etc.).
  - The tailings delivery and return water pipes will be removed, as will the conveyor belt feeding the tailings dumps
- On-going seepage, control of rainwater.
  - Minimise seepage through control of rainwater on residue.
- Long-term stability.
  - Long-term stability will be enhanced by the relatively flat slope of spoil areas and the revegetation of bare areas with a combination of creeping and tufted grass species.
- Final rehabilitation in respect of erosion and dust control.
  - Long-term erosion and dust control will be achieved by the re-vegetation of spoil and bare areas with a combination of creeping and tufted grass species.

### 4 Rehabilitation process

- Firstly, all steel pipes will be removed to other mines within the Imerys Group. These pipes will then be reused as part of their operations. The pipes will be removed in accordance with all environmental principles as well as the requirements of the MHSA
- It is proposed to slope most of the material to the north in the direction of the tailings facility and to the east towards the plant area. Once the sloping is finalised it is also recommended to add contour paddocks along the side slopes of the waste rock dump no more than 20m apart. Previous contours of 50m apart have shown erosion to form along the slope
- The removal of unwanted roads will prevent erosion of these areas. Some roads will still be used by farmers and cannot be removed
- It is proposed to plant a thick row of euphorbias on the top of the high walls. This will be done to prevent access of people and animals to these high walls
- ii) The process for managing any environmental damage, pollution, pumping and treatment of extraneous water or ecological degradation as a result of undertaking a listed activity

Refer to Part A(d)(i).

### iii) Potential risk of acid mine drainage

According to the Geohydrological Evaluation (Aurecon, 2010):



'It was proven at the Havercroft Andalusite Mine that the stable & inert nature of the andalusite and gangue increases the water quality by absorbing certain elements'.

It can therefore be assumed that the risk of AMD or potential groundwater contamination associated with the mineral to be mined is therefore minimal to zero.

- iv) Steps taken to investigate, assess, and evaluate the impact of acid mine drainage Refer above, not necessary.
- v) Engineering or mine design solutions to be implemented to avoid or remedy acid mine drainage

Refer above, not necessary.

vi) Measures that will be put in place to remedy any residual or cumulative impact that may result from acid mine drainage

Refer above, not necessary.

vii) Volumes and rate of water use required for the mining, trenching or bulk sampling operation

This is not applicable for the proposed activities.

### viii) Has a water use licence has been applied for?

Havercroft Operation has and IWUL; however, it has elapsed. DWS will advise whether an IWULA is necessary for the decommissioning and rehabilitation. Annesley Operation has an IWUL. A pre-application meeting is set to take place on the 19th of July 2018 where the IWUL will be discussed to make the necessary amendments to the IWUL to ensure it is up to date.

# ix) Impacts to be mitigated in their respective phases

Refer to Part A(g)(v) as well as Part A(i) of this report.

### e) Impact management outcomes

Refer to Part A(g)(v) as well as Part A(i) of this report.

### f) Impact management actions

Refer to Part A(g)(v) as well as Part A(i) of this report.



# g) Financial provision

- (a) Describe the closure objectives and the extent to which they have been aligned to the baseline environment described under Regulation 22 (2) (d) as described in 2.4 herein Refer to Part B(1)(d) for closure objectives.
- (b) Confirm specifically that the environmental objectives in relation to closure have been consulted with landowner and interested and affected parties

  All comments are included in this EIA/EMP.
- (c) Provide a rehabilitation plan that describes and shows the scale and aerial extent of the main mining activities, including the anticipated mining area at the time of closure The Annesley Andalusite Mine Closure Liability Update were submitted to DMR. These plans include rehabilitation of the area. The Annesley Andalusite Mine (Havercroft Operation) Annual Rehabilitation Plan was also submitted to DMR and includes the anticipated mining activities at anticipated time of closure.
- (d) Explain why it can be confirmed that the rehabilitation plan is compatible with the closure objectives

The closure objectives in this EMP were taken from the Annesley Andalusite Mine Closure Liability Update as discussed above. The Annesley Andalusite Mine (Havercroft Operation) Annual Rehabilitation Plan includes the latest closure objectives which are in line with the rehabilitation plan. The rehabilitation plans outline how the closure objectives are to be achieved and they work simultaneously.

- (e) Calculate and state the quantum of the financial provision required to manage and rehabilitate the environment in accordance with the applicable guideline

  Refer to Part A(s).
- (f) Confirm that the financial provision will be provided as determined Refer to Part A(s).



# h) Mechanisms for monitoring compliance with and performance assessment against the environmental management programme and reporting thereon

Baseline monitoring is required to establish existing conditions that will help to define the requirements for site restoration and provide a basis for comparison of effects during the operation. Compliance monitoring should be carried out during the operation to ensure that the specified target limits are being met. The following environmental monitoring will be conducted at Annesley.

Only monitoring applicable to this project is included, all additional monitoring is found in prior environmental documents.

# i) Monitoring of impact management actions

All impacts identified in the impact assessment must be monitored to ensure the correct management thereof takes place.

### 1 Topography

Mechanism for monitoring compliance:

- After reshaping the resultant topography must be surveyed to determine the degree to which the final topography meets planned objectives
- Surface drainage and slope must meet land capability objectives, a surveyor must assess this
- Deviations from plan must be documented, and the final reshaped surface should be signed off by the responsible person prior to the replacement of topsoil.

Environmental component affected	Monitoring and reporting	Responsible persons
and impact	frequency	
Visual aspect. Change in topography	Once after reshaping	Mine manager / site geologist and
		surveyor.

### 2 Soil pollution and change in landscape

Mechanism for monitoring compliance:

Monitoring will take place in accordance to the rehabilitation plan.

- Maintenance as per maintenance register.
- Inspections of routes for any pollution.
- Inspections of pipeline routes.
- Inspections of plant and infrastructure area.
- Inspection of road routes.



- Erosion monitoring.
- Surface water quality monitoring; groundwater quality monitoring; and monitoring of surface water drainage systems in accordance to the water monitoring programme
- Spill handling procedures should be adopted in the event of a spillage.

En	vironmental component affected and impact	Monitoring and	Responsible persons
		reporting frequency	
•	Soils, land capability, surrounding land use and	Weekly basis.	Mine manager / site
	landscape character. Pollution of topsoil		geologist.
•	Environmental noise from vehicles and machinery that		
	is not maintained		
•	Surface and groundwater: Runoff or infiltration of		
	spillages		

### 3 Surface water monitoring

### Mechanism for monitoring compliance:

Surface water monitoring will take place as per the water monitoring programme. The water monitoring programme was compiled in line with the stipulated conditions as per the IWUL. The various parameters can be seen in Table 32 and 33 below. It is the responsibility of the specialist to ensure these parameters are monitored.

The following information is extracted from the Water Monitoring Programme (BECS Environmental, 2018).

### Parameters to be monitored

Table 32: Surface water monitoring parameters for Section 21c&i and Section 21g water uses

ASWM0, ASWM1, ASWM2, ASWM3, ASWM4, ASWM5, ASWM6							
Variables to	Unit	Limits	Limits				су
be sampled							
Heavy metals	Aluminium	TWQR and Criteria	Aluminium cond	centration (µg/•)		Every	6
			pH< 6.5	pH > 6.5		months	
		Target Water Quality Range (TWQR) • 5 • 10		(January			
		Chronic Effect Value (CEV)	10	20		and July)	
		Acute Effect Value (AEV)	100	150			
	Iron	The iron concentration should not be allowed to vary by more than 10 % of the background dissolved iron concentration for a particular site or case, at a specific time.					



Variables to	Unit	Limits				Frequ	
be sampled							
	Magnesium 58.85 mg/l (from WUL)						
	(Mg)	,					
	Nickel	No clear guide	e for aqua	tic ecosystem	s. Sample r	results used to	-
		compare to pre			•		
	Chromium	>7 μg					<u> </u>
	(vi)						
	Chromium	>12 µg					<u> </u>
	(iii)	1 3					
	Copper (Cu)						
		TWQR and Criteria			entration (μg/•) 		
			< 60 (Soft)	60-119 (Medium)	120-180 (Hard)	> 180 (Very hard)	
		Target Water Quality Range	• 0.3	• 0.8	• 1.2	• 1.4	
		(TWQR)					
	Manganese	>180 µg					-
	(Mn)						
	Total Iron	The total iron	concentration	on should not	be allowed t	o vary by more	-
		than 10 % of the background dissolved iron concentration for a					
		particular site	or case, at a	a specific time			
Total	Total						-
hardness	hardness						
	(CaCO) in						
	(mg/l) used						
	for Copper						
	interpretation						
Hydrocarbons		Any and all res	sults must b	e 0.			1
Rough	Basic flow	To be compare	ed to previo	us results.			Monthly
estimate of	speed						
flow	calculated						
	distance						
	covered in						
	time. Two						
	stakes on						
	banks of						
	system,						
	exactly two						
	meters apart.						



Variables to	Unit	Limits	Frequency
be sampled			
	Using		
	stopwatch,		
	determine		
	flow speed.		
pH <sup>1</sup>		6.0-9.0	Monthly
Total	mg/l	≤450	Monthly
Dissolved			
Solids <sup>1</sup>			
Electrical	mS/m	≤70	Monthly
Conductivity <sup>2</sup>			
Suspended	mg/l	Background TSS concentrations are < 100 mg/R. Any increase in	Monthly
Solids <sup>1</sup>		TSS concentrations must be limited to < 10 % of the background	
		TSS concentrations at a specific site and time.	
Nitrate (NO <sub>3</sub> ) <sup>3</sup>	mg/l	<0.5	Monthly
Oxido nitrate	mg/l	<0.5	Monthly
(NO <sub>4</sub> ) <sup>3</sup>			
Phosphate	mg/l	<0.005	Monthly
(PO <sub>4</sub> ) <sup>3</sup>			
Temperature <sup>4</sup>	Degrees	16-20°C	Monthly
	Celsius		

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>All parameters, units and limits were taken from the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, 1996. South African Water Quality Guidelines (first edition). Volume 8: Field Guide.

### 3.1 Return water dam

Table 33: Quarry 3 RWD water monitoring parameters for Section 21g water uses

ARWD				
Variables to be sampled	Unit	Leachable	Frequency	
		Concentration		
		Threshold (LCT) Limits		
Arsenic	(mg/l)	0.01	Annually	
Boron	(mg/l)	0.5	Annually	
Barium	(mg/l)	0.7	Annually	



<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>General limits for general authorisations

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, 1996

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup>Limnology, 2018

Monogomont	Drogramma
Management	Programme

ARWD				
Variables to be sampled	Unit	Leachable	Frequency	
		Concentration		
		Threshold (LCT) Limits		
Cadmium	(mg/l)	0.003	Annually	
Cobalt	(mg/l)	0.5	Annually	
Chromium Total	(mg/l)	0.1	Annually	
Chromium (VI)	(mg/l)	0.05	Annually	
Copper	(mg/l)	2.0	Annually	
Mercury	(mg/l)	0.006	Annually	
Manganese	(mg/l)	0.5	Annually	
Molybdenum	(mg/l)	0.07	Annually	
Nickel	(mg/l)	0.07	Annually	
Lead	(mg/l)	0.01	Annually	
Antimony	(mg/l)	0.02	Annually	
Selenium	(mg/l)	0.01	Annually	
Vanadium	(mg/l)	0.2	Annually	
Zinc	(mg/l)	5.0	Annually	
TDS	(mg/l)	1000	Annually	
Chloride	(mg/l)	300	Annually	
Sulphate	(mg/l)	250	Annually	
Nitrate-N	(mg/l)	11	Annually	
Fluoride	(mg/l)	1.5	Annually	
Cyanide Total	(mg/l)	0.07	Annually	

All parameters, units and limits were taken from the National norms and standards for the assessment of waste for landfill disposal, GN635 of 2013 in terms of the National Environmental Management Waste Act, no 59 of 2008 as amended.

### 3 Ground water monitoring

# Mechanism for monitoring compliance:

Ground water monitoring will take place as per the water monitoring programme. The water monitoring programme was compiled in line with the stipulated conditions as per the IWUL. The various parameters can be seen in Table 34 below. It is the responsibility of the specialist to ensure these parameters are monitored.

The following information is extracted from the Water Monitoring Programme (BECS Environmental, 2018).

### Parameters to be monitored



Table 34: Groundwater monitoring parameters for Section 21g water uses

ANW1, ANBH Penge, ANBH Chief, ANBH Mine, ANQ6, upstream of the BH School borehole, and					
downstream of boreholes ANBH, CHIEF and H12-2270.					
Variables to be	Units	Groundwater target water quality	Frequency		
sampled		range as per the IWUL			
Heavy metals	See table	above			
Hydrocarbons	See table	above			
рН		7.84 - 8.62	Quarterly		
Electrical Conductivity	(mS/m)	152.40	Quarterly		
Chlorides	(mg/l)	302.40	Quarterly		
Sulphates	(mg/l)	57.27	Quarterly		
Orthophosphate			Quarterly		
Fluoride	(mg/l)	0.43	Quarterly		
Sodium	(mg/l)	138.60	Quarterly		
Potassium			Quarterly		
Calcium	(mg/l)	74.13	Quarterly		
Magnesium	(mg/l)	58.85	Quarterly		
Aluminium			Quarterly		
Iron			Quarterly		
Manganese			Quarterly		
Nitrate	(mg/l)	0.40	Quarterly		
Nickel			Quarterly		
Copper			Quarterly		
Total chromium			Quarterly		
Total hardness			Quarterly		
Iron			Quarterly		
Total dissolved solids	(mg/l)	450	Quarterly		
Total suspended solids			Quarterly		
Zinc			Quarterly		
Silica			Quarterly		
Faecal coliforms	(100ml)	0	Quarterly		
Total alkalinity			Quarterly		
Total Petroleum hydrocarbon			Quarterly		

All parameters, units and limits were taken from the IWUL limits (Groundwater Target Water Quality Range).



### 4 Fall out dust

# Mechanism for monitoring compliance:

### Method:

ASTM D1739 1998 (Reapproved 2017) and compliance with Atmospheric Emission Licence (SK17/1/8/5/AEL/ANN ANDA/MINE).

- Determine the contribution of dustfall in residential and non-residential areas in the vicinity of the mine; and
- To establish the baseline dustfall at the mine
- · Maintain a complaint register
  - The complaints register should be kept with security at the entrance to the site;
  - The complaints register should provide space for the following information: complainant name, complaint, physical address, telephone number, date and the time when the complaint was registered; and
  - All air quality related complaints should be investigated, and remedial steps taken.

The monthly dustfall monitoring reports will comply with Regulation 5(a) of the National Dustfall Control Regulations. Regulation 5 (a) requires a dustfall monitoring report to provide:

- a) Information on the location of sampling sites, including latitudinal and longitudinal coordinates, and a position indicator on a topographic map;
- b) Classification of the area where samplers are located, in terms of residential and non-residential, and identification of sensitive receptors:
- c) Reference to the standard methods used for site selection, sampling and analysis, and any methods/laboratory accreditation, if applicable;
- d) The dustfall monitoring results including a comparison of current year and historical results (if any) for each site, and including a tabular summary of compliance with the dustfall standard set out in regulation 3; and
- e) Meteorological data (wind speed and direction, rainfall) for the sampling area; and any other relevant data that might influence the results.

Environmental component affected and	Monitoring and reporting	Responsible persons
impact	frequency	
Dust generation on air quality	Monthly monitoring.	Mine manager / site
		geologist.



# 5 Job creation and community safety

Mechanism for monitoring compliance:

Monitor and evaluate the Social and labour plan.

En	vironmental	component	affected	and	Monitoring a	nd reporting	frequency	Responsible
im	pact							persons
•	Socio-econo	mic aspects. Jo	ob creation.		Continuous reporting.	monitor.	Annually	Site manager.

# ii) Monitoring and reporting frequency

Refer to Part B, section (i) above.

# iii) Responsible persons

Refer to Part B, section (i) above.

# iv) Time period for implementing impact management actions

Refer to Part B, section (i) above.

# v) Mechanism for monitoring compliance

Refer to Part B, section (i) above.

# i) Indicate the frequency of the submission of the performance assessment report

The performance of the EIA/EMP will be assessed every two years. A financial provision will accompany the EIA/EMP which will be updated on an annual basis. This financial provision update will be accompanied by a report on rehabilitation that has taken place. An audit on the Integrated Water Use License (IWUL) was also done to ensure compliance in all water uses and activities taking place on the mine.

# j) Environmental awareness plan

This section includes:

- 1. Manner in which the applicant intends to inform his or her employees of any environmental risk which may result from their work; and
- 2. Manner in which risks will be dealt with in order to avoid pollution or the degradation of the environment.



The following was extracted from the Environmental training procedure (BECS Environmental, 2016).

# i) Induction training

- Induction training is relevant to all new employees and contractors (including any employee and/or contractor that has not yet been trained on the environmental induction material) as well as all visitors to Annesley Andalusite Mine.
- 2. Training will be repeated every 18 months.
- 3. Induction training will include the following:
  - a. Relevant impacts and management as per the approved and operational EMP of Annesley Andalusite Mine (these will be site- and job specific);
  - b. Environmental procedures; and
  - c. Environmental emergency procedure.
- 4. The trainee will after completion of induction:
  - a. Sign the necessary induction form/book; and
  - b. Have all relevant PPE necessary for the specific job.

# ii) General environmental awareness training

- 1. Management will identify environmental awareness needs and related environmental topics.
- 2. The environmental awareness will include:
  - a. The significant environmental impacts, actual or potential, of their work activities and the benefits of improved personal performance; and
  - b. The potential consequences of departure from specified operating procedures.
- 3. Environmental awareness training will form part of the safety talks prior to each shift.
- 4. Visual aids will be used, where applicable to help with awareness training. These could be in the form of posters displayed at specific work areas after training was done.

### iii) Competency training

- Management will identify job-related training needs for all employees who have or can have a significant impact on the environment.
- 2. A training needs matrix will be completed for Annesley Andalusite Mine.
- Job specific training will convey the importance of conformance with the environmental procedures.
   Simplified summaries of these procedures may be used to ensure better understanding at lower levels of the organisation.



- 4. Management will identify specialised training needs. for personnel performing tasks, which can cause significant environmental impacts, or personnel who needs specialised environmental knowledge for areas of responsibility. These courses will be sourced externally.
- 5. Management will undergo legal training from time to time. A summary of this training wil also be given to employees of Annesley Andalusite Mine.

# iv) Development of training material

- The Health and Safety Officer will develop and maintain training material for induction training, general
  environmental awareness and competency training. This excludes specialised competency training
  which will be externally sourced.
- 2. This training material will be based on the approved and operational EMP as well as environmental procedures. Additional topics will also be included for general environmental awareness.
- 3. Training material will be reviewed using results from audits, changes to plant/operation, competency assessments and new significant aspects.

# v) Scheduling of training

1. Once training topics and material have been compiled, the Health and Safety Officer will ensure employees are scheduled according to the needs identified.

# vi) Training records

- 1. Upon completion of training, a training record will be completed. This may be in the following formats:
  - a. Attendance registers;
  - b. Sign off on procedure to demonstrate understanding of procedure; and/or
  - c. Certificates of attendance / completion.
- 2. All training records will be kept for the period of employment plus an additional 5 years.

# vii) Reconciliation to determine gaps in attendance

All employees and contractors must undergo all training as identified (as per training needs analysis).
 Reconciliation will be done on all training attendance registers, against the training schedules, to identify any shortcomings in training performed and reschedule if necessary.



#### viii) **Competency assessment**

- 1. An evaluation will be conducted on all employees and contractors. The aim is to identify both the effectiveness of training as well as the competence in performing the job.
- 2. Competency evaluation records will be completed by the approved training assessor and will be included with the attendance records.

#### k) Specific information required by the Competent Authority

#### 1 Financial provision

The financial provision will be reviewed on an annual basis.

#### 2 Procedures for environmentally related emergencies and remediation

The following was extracted from the Environmental emergency's procedure (BECS Environmental, 2016).

#### 2.1 List of environmental incidents

Description or	Aspect	Impact	Associated procedure and other
activity			records
Diesel tank	Burst of pipe, leakage from	Major spillage causing	Spill handling procedure (AAM-EP-
	tank	soil pollution	02), Environmental Emergency
		Any spillage into a	Response Plan, diesel MSDS,
		water resource	
Diesel tanker	Off-loading and loading	Major spillage causing	Spill handling procedure (AAM-EP-
	spillages	soil pollution	02), Environmental Emergency
		Any spillage into a	Response Plan, diesel MSDS
		water resource	
TBE or acetone (at	Spillage of TBE or acetone	Major spillage causing	Spill handling procedure (AAM-EP-
stores in quantity of	during off-loading, loading,	soil pollution	02), Environmental Emergency
210I)	handling, or storage	Any spillage into a	Response Plan, TBE MSDS,
		water resource	acetone MSDS
Acetone at mine	Uncontrolled fire	Damage to the	Environmental Emergency
stores (210I)		surrounding	Response Plan, acetone MSDS
		environment, soil & air	
		pollution	
TDF and WRDs	Failure of side walls or	Major spillage causing	Spill handling procedure (AAM-EP-
	overtopping	soil pollution	02), Environmental Emergency
		Any spillage into a	Response Plan, MRDs CoP
		water resource	
		Safety of community	



Manad	ement	Progra	amme

Description or	Aspect	Impact	Associated procedure and other
activity			records
Process water and	Burst or leakages of	Major spillage causing	Spill handling procedure (AAM-EP-
fine tailings	pipelines	soil pollution	02), Environmental Emergency
pipelines		Any spillage into a	Response Plan
		water resource	
Abnormal	Overflow of dirty water	Major spillage causing	Environmental Emergency
rainfall/floods	infrastructure or mine	soil pollution	Response Plan
	residue	Any spillage into a	
		water resource	
Veld fires	Veld fire through mining	Destruction of fauna	Environmental Emergency
	area	and flora, hazard to	Response Plan, smoke detectors
		community	and fire-hose inspection checklists
RWD (quarry 3) and	RWD (quarry 3) failure or	Major spillage causing	Spill handling procedure (AAM-EP-
emergency dam	emergency dam failure	soil pollution	02), Environmental Emergency
		Any spillage into a	Response Plan
		water resource	

#### 2.2 Major spillages onto soil or spillages into water resources

- 1. Annesley Andalusite Mine will as soon as reasonably practicable after obtaining knowledge of the incident, report through the most effective means reasonably available:
  - a. the nature of the incident;
  - b. any risks posed by the incident to public health, safety and property;
  - c. the toxicity of substances or by-products released by the incident; and
  - d. any steps that should be taken in order to avoid or minimise the effects of the incident on public health and the environment to:
    - the DWS and/or the Limpopo Department of Economic Development, Environment, and Tourism:
    - ii. the South African Police Services and the relevant fire prevention service;
    - iii. the relevant head of municipality; and
    - iv. all persons whose health may be affected by the incident.
- 2. Annesley Andalusite Mine will, as soon as reasonably practicable after knowledge of the incident:
  - a. take all reasonable measures to contain and minimise the effects of the incident, including its effects on the environment and any risks posed by the incident to the health, safety and property of persons:
  - b. undertake clean-up procedures;



- c. remedy the effects of the incident;
- d. assess the immediate and long-term effects of the incident on the environment and public health; and
- e. and take such measures as the catchment management agency may either verbally or in writing direct within the time specified by such institution.
- 3. Steps to be taken to contain, minimise and clean-up are as follow:
  - a. Isolate and evacuate the affected area to prevent unauthorised access;
  - b. If safe to do so, isolate source of leak or spillage to prevent further losses;
  - c. Use appropriate PPE;
  - d. Protect stormwater drains around the affected area by sealing them off:
  - Construct berm walls cross-stream using soil if pollution has escaped into drainage ditches; and
  - If possible construct temporary retention dams across stream using soil, and divert flow into them.
  - e. Transfer any residual contents and contaminated absorbents to suitable temporary storage containers:
  - f. Obtain specialist advice on decontamination of surfaces, drains and interceptors;
  - g. Remove any retention berms/temporary retention dams only when authorised; and
  - h. Dispose of contaminated material as hazardous waste (see Waste Management Procedure: AAM-EP-01).
- 4. Annesley Andalusite Mine will, within 14 days of the incident, report to the DWS, and/or the Limpopo Department of Economic Development, Environment, and Tourism, and relevant head of municipality such information as is available to enable an initial evaluation of the incident, including:
  - a. the nature of the incident;
  - b. the substances involved and an estimation of the quantity released and their possible acute effect on persons and the environment and data needed to assess these effects;
  - c. initial measures taken to minimise impacts;
  - d. causes of the incident, whether direct or indirect, including equipment, technology, system, or management failure; and
  - e. measures taken and to be taken to avoid a recurrence of such incident.

# 2.3 Fire emergencies

- 1. Refer to Type B Emergencies of the Environmental Emergency Response Plan.
- 2. In addition to the Environmental Emergency Response Plan, Annesley Mine will inspect and maintain the smoke detectors at the sub-stations, the fire hose at the plant and workshop, and fire-proofing and sealers in the electrical cables.



## 2.4 Flooding emergencies

Management Programme

Refer to Type C Emergencies of the Environmental Emergency Response Plan

### 2.5 Drills

- 1. Emergency drills of above incidents will be held at least biannually.
- 2. The emergency drill should be a practical exercise where practicable or as a minimum, a desktop exercise.
- 3. A realistic scenario will be created, e.g. water can be spilled from an oil drum in order to test the reaction of personnel in line with the emergency procedure.
- 4. The emergency drill report should be completed.
- 5. It is advisable that photographs or videos should be taken for review after the drill has been conducted.
- A debriefing session should be held after each drill to discuss any non-conformances or areas for improvement identified during the drill.

# 2.6 Tailings disposal facility

The tailings disposal facility design, operational controls, monitoring and management systems are designed to prevent the potential hazards developing into unacceptable risks. However, in the event that the systems fail and / or an unforeseen event occurs that manifest into a risk, emergency procedures are appropriate to avoid the loss of life and minimisation of damage.

The occurrences of emergency situations generally arise as a result of an uncontrollable event, i.e. a heavy rain storm, coinciding with a set of sub-standard conditions. To avoid an emergency, the prevailing conditions need to be managed such that irrespective of the uncontrollable event, an emergency situation would not prevail. Prevailing conditions are managed through daily functions. If everything is maintained and operated according to the appropriate standard, the status of the facility could be designated Code Green. If something falls out of specification that can be rectified by the on-dam resources, which occurs on a regular basis in keeping with the nature of a TDF operation, a Code Blue could be assigned. If the situation is beyond the capability or capacity of the on-dam resources to resolve, the status is elevated to a Code Yellow, which should prompt external management intervention. If the situation threatens beyond the confines of the TDF, an emergency state or Code Orange status is initiated. The Code Orange status is an emergency standby mode. This status triggers the emergency response plan. If the situation is beyond control and a significant risk or fault is about to occur, then a Code Red status is invoked, which would prompt immediate evacuation.

There are two major risks or faults associated with the TDF, both of which could lead to the same result or events. The faults are;



Management Programme

slope failure and

over-topping

The significant event that could occur should either of these faults occur is the escape of tailings in the form of a heavy fluid that flows downstream engulfing everything in its path. The potential reach of the escaped tailings is called the zone of influence. Anything or anyone within the zone of influence is at risk.

The procedures must be in keeping with the identified risks and possible consequences. All personnel working on the TDF must be briefed and familiar with the emergency logic and procedures. An emergency awareness discussion must be conducted with all TDF personnel at least once a month.

# 3 Groundwater

The mine needs to implement the necessary investigations during the operational phase and prior to commencement with any final rehabilitation projects, to investigate the applicable groundwater aspects such as the pollution plume movement, the anticipated quality and quantity of seepage. The mine should declare the waste rock save for backfilling (by implementing the necessary studies), to demonstrate that such activities are not likely to cause pollution of a water resource. Waste classification will be done.

# 2) Undertaking

The EAP herewith confirms

a) the correctness of the information provided in the reports
---

b)	the inclusion of comments and inputs from stakeholders and I&APs	$\times$
----	--	----------

c)	the inclusion of inputs and recommendations from the specialist reports where relevant	$\times$	<i>7</i>
----	--	----------	----------

d) the acceptability of the project in relation to the finding of the assessment and level of mitigation proposed

The EIA/EMP will, should it comply with the provisions of section 24N of NEMA as well as the applicable EIA Regulations i.t.o. NEMA, be approved, become an obligation in terms of the approved EIA/EMP and mining right issued.



176

Herewith I, the person whose name and identity number is stated below, confirm that I am the person authorised to act as representative of the, and confirm that the above EIA & EMP compiled in accordance with Appendices 3 & 4 of the EIA Regulations.

Full Names and Surname	Salome Beeslaar
Identity Number	8310190032081
Designation	EAP
Signature	Booslaar

-END-



# References

Aurecon, 2010: Geohydrological Evaluation for the Water Use Licence Application

BECS Environmental, 2015: Environmental Management Programme Performance Assessment Report

BECS Environmental, 2016: AAM-EP-01-Waste management procedure

BECS Environmental, 2016: AAM-EP-02-Spill handling procedure

BECS Environmental, 2016: AAM-EP-03-Hazardous substance procedure

BECS Environmental, 2016: AAM-EP-04-Environmental training procedure

BECS Environmental, 2016: AAM-EP-05-Environmental emergencies procedure

BECS Environmental, 2016: Final Closure Plan and Rehabilitation Plan: As part of Closure Application, draft

BECS Environmental, 2018: Quarterly Water Quality Monitoring Report - Havercroft Mine

BECS Environmental, 2018: Quarterly Water Quality Monitoring Report -Annesley Mine

BECS Environmental, 2018: Water Monitoring Programme

Department of Water Affairs, 1996: South African Water Quality Guidelines for South Africa

Galago Environmental, 2016: Aquatic Ecosystem Delineation Report

Galago Environmental, 2016: Aquatic ecosystem rehabilitation plan for the On a Portion of the farm ANNESLEY 109 KT

Galago Environmental, 2016: Flora Report for a Portion of the farm ANNESLEY 109 KT

Greater Tubatse Local Municipality, 2018: Greater Tubatse Local Municipality Integrated Development Plan

Imerys Refractory Minerals South Africa, 2013: Annesley Andalusite Mine - Mandatory Code of Practice for Mine Residue Deposits

Imerys Refractory Minerals South Africa, 2018: Social and Labour Plan

Imerys Refractory Minerals South Africa, 2017: Annesley Andalusite Mine Annual Report (March 2016 -February 2017)

International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources, 2000: The IUCN Red List of **Threatened Species** 

Letaba Environmental Services, 2018: Chemical and Microbiological Analysis Report

Letaba Environmental Services, 2018: Feedback on email letter

Letaba Environmental Services, 2018: Procedure for Microbiology Samples; Handling, Collection and Transport

# LWI, 2008: Draft final air quality management plan

Rational Environmental, 2016: Diversion Storm Water Management Plan

Rational Environmental, 2016: Earthworks Report

Sekhukhune District, 2017: Final IDP/ Budget Review 2017-2018

Shangoni AquaScience, 2017: Geohydrological impact assessment as input to the Section24G Rectification



Shangoni Management Services, 2006: Environmental Management Programme

Shangoni Management Services, 2012: Integrated Water and Waste Management Plan

Shangoni Management Services, 2015: Mine Closure Liability Update (Havercroft)

Shangoni Management Services, 2016: Mine Closure Liability Update (Annesley)

Shangoni Management Services, 2016: Air Emission License

Management Programme

Shangoni Management Services, 2016: Fugitive dust emission management plan draft

Shangoni Management Services, 2016: Annesley Andalusite Mine Ambient Air quality monitoring programme

Shangoni Management Services, 2017: Section 24G Technical Supporting Document: Construction and Operation of Pollution Control Dam, Silt Traps and Overflow Dams

Shangoni Management Services, 2017: Dustfall Monitoring Report for Sampling Period: 26 January to 28 February 2017

Shangoni Management Services, 2018: Air quality impact assessment for the proposed remining project at Annesley

(http://www.ostrichsa.co.za/downloads/bio\_diversity/rehabilitation.pdf)

Alien and invasive species list, GN 599 of 2014 i.t.o. National Environmental Management Biodiversity Act No 10 of 2004 (as amended)

Alien and invasive species regulations, GN 598 of 2014 i.t.o. National Environmental Management Biodiversity Act No 10 of 2004 (as amended)

Asbestos Regulations, GN 155 of 2011 i.t.o. The Occupational Health and Safety Act No 85 of 1993

Declaration of Group II Hazardous Substances, GN 1382 of 1994 i.t.o. The Hazardous Substances Act No 15 of 1973

Department of Environmental Affairs, 2013: Mining and Biodiversity Guideline: Mainstreaming biodiversity into the mining sector

Environmental Conservation Act No 73 of 1989 (as amended)

Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations, GN 982 of 2014 i.t.o. the National Environmental Management Act No 107 of 1998 (as amended)

Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations: Listing Notice 1, GN 983 of 2014 i.t.o. the National Environmental Management Act No 107 of 1998 (as amended)

Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations: Listing Notice 2, GN 984 of 2014 i.t.o. the National Environmental Management Act No 107 of 1998 (as amended)

Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations: Listing Notice 3, GN 985 of 2014 i.t.o. the National Environmental Management Act No 107 of 1998 (as amended)

Financial Provisioning Regulations, GN 1147 of 2015 i.t.o. National Environmental Management Act No 107 of 1998 (as amended)



Group IV Hazardous Substances: Exclusions and Exemptions, GN 246 of 1993 i.t.o. The Hazardous Substances Act No 15 of 1973

Hazardous Chemical Substances Regulations, GN 1179 of 1995 i.t.o. The Occupational Health and Safety Act No 85 of 1993

Hazardous Substances Act No 15 of 1973 (as amended)

List of Activities Which Result in Atmospheric Emissions which have or may have a Significant Detrimental Effect on the Environment, Including Health, Social Conditions, Economic Conditions, Ecological Conditions or Cultural Heritage, GN 248 of 2010 i.t.o. National Environmental Management Air Quality Act No 39 of 2004 (as amended)

List of Activities Which Result in Atmospheric Emissions which have or may have a Significant Detrimental Effect on the Environment, Including Health, Social Conditions, Economic Conditions, Ecological Conditions or Cultural Heritage, GN 893 of 2013 i.t.o. National Environmental Management Air Quality Act No 39 of 2004 (as amended)

List of Waste Management Activities that have, or are Likely to have, a Detrimental Effect on the Environment, GN 718 of 2009 i.t.o. National Environmental Management Waste Act 59 of 2009 (as amended)

List of Waste Management Activities that have, or are Likely to have, a Detrimental Effect on the Environment, GN 921 of 2013 i.t.o. National Environmental Management Waste Act 59 of 2009 (as amended)

Mine Health and Safety Act No 29 of 1996 (as amended)

Minerals Act No 50 of 1991

Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act No 28 of 2002 (as amended)

Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Regulations, GN 527 of 2004 (as amended) i.t.o. the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act No 28 of 2002 (as amended)

National Ambient Air Quality Standards, GN 1210 of 2009 i.t.o. The National Environmental Management Air Quality Act No 39 of 2004

National ambient air quality standard for PM less than 2.5 micron metres, GN 486 of 2012 i.t.o. National Environmental Management Air Quality Act No 39 of 2004 (as amended)

National Dust Control Regulations, GN 827 of 2013 i.t.o. National Environmental Management Air Quality Act No 39 of 2004 (as amended)

National Environmental Management Act No 107 of 1998 (as amended)

National Environmental Management Air Quality Act No 39 of 2004 (as amended)

National Environmental Management Biodiversity Act No 10 of 2004 (as amended)

National Environmental Management Waste Act 59 of 2009 (as amended)

National Forest Act No 84 of 1998

National Heritage Resources Act No 25 of 1999



Management Programme

National Road Traffic Act No 93 0f 1996

National Road Traffic Regulations, GN 255 of 2000 i.t.o. The National Road Traffic Act No 93 of 1996

National Veld and Forest Fire Act No 101 of 1998

National Water Act No 36 of 1998 (as amended)

Noise Control Regulations, GN 154 of 1992 i.t.o. The Environmental Conservation Act No 73 of 1989

Occupational Health and Safety Act No 85 of 1993 (as amended)

Publication of national list of invasive species, GN 507 of 2013 i.t.o. National Environmental Management Biodiversity Act No 10 of 2004 (as amended)

Publication of prohibited alien species, GN 508 of 2013 i.t.o. National Environmental Management Biodiversity Act No 10 of 2004 (as amended)

Publication of exempted alien species, GN 509 of 2013 i.t.o. National Environmental Management Biodiversity Act No 10 of 2004 (as amended)

Regulations, GN 453 of 1977 i.t.o. The Hazardous Substances Act No 15 of 1973 (as amended)

Regulations, GN 1048 of 1984 i.t.o. Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act No 43 of 1983 (as amended)

Regulations Concerning the Control of Noxious or Offensive Gases Emitted by Diesel-Driven Vehicles, GN 1651 of 1974 i.t.o. The Atmospheric Pollution Prevention Act No 45 of 1965

Regulations for the Prohibition of the Use, Manufacturing, Import and Export of Asbestos and Asbestos Containing Materials, GN 341 i.t.o. The Environmental Conservation Act No 73 of 1989

Regulations on Use of Water for Mining and Related Activities Aimed at the Protection of Water Resources, GN 704 of 1999 i.t.o. National Water Act No 36 of 1998 (as amended)

Regulations regarding the phasing-out and management of ozone- depleting substances, GN 351 of 2014 i.t.o. National Environmental Management Air Quality Act No 39 of 2004 (as amended)

Regulations Relating to Group III Hazardous Substances, GN 697 of 1989 i.t.o. The Hazardous Substances

Act No 15 of 1973

Regulations Relating to Group IV Hazardous Substances, GN 247 of 1993 i.t.o. The Hazardous Substances

Act No 15 of 1973

Regulations Relating to Surveying, Mapping and Mine Plans, GN 447 of 2011 2011 i.t.o. the Mine Health and Safety Act No 29 of 1996 (as amended)

Regulations to Phase-out the use of PCB Materials and PCB Contaminated Materials, GN 549 of 2014 i.t.o. National Environmental Management Act No 107 of 1998 (as amended)

Waste classification and management regulations, GN 634 of 2013 i.t.o. National Environmental Management Waste Act 59 of 2009 (as amended)

Convention on Biological Diversity, ratified by RSA on 2 November 1995

UN Framework on Climate Change and Kyoto Protocol, ratified by RSA on 29 August 1997



Stockholm Convention on Persistent Organic Pollutants, ratified by RSA on 4 September 2002

Vienna Convention on the Protection of the Ozone Layer, and the Montreal Protocol, ratified by RSA on 15

January 1990

SABS 072 - Code of Practice for the Safe Handling of Pesticides

SABS 0228 - Code of Practice for the Identification and Classification of Dangerous Substances and Goods

SABS 0229 - Code of Practice for Packaging of Dangerous Goods for Road and Rail Transportation in South Africa

SANS 241:2006 - Drinking Water Quality Requirements, Edition 6.1

SANS 10234:2008 - Globally Harmonized System of classification and labelling of chemicals

SANS 10286:1998 - Mine Residue

Management Programme

SANS 10400-P:2010 - The application of the National Building Regulations (Part P of the National Building Regulations, issued in terms of the National Building Regulations and Building Standards Act No 103 of 1977)



